

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



WIDENER LIBRARY



HX DTKK 3

# SOUTH AFRICAN WAR RECORD

OF THE

## 1ST BATTALION

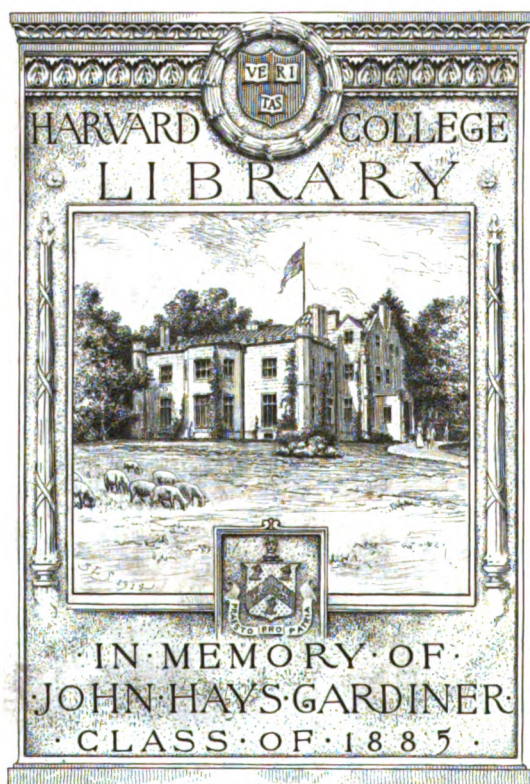
## SHERWOOD FORESTERS,

## DERBYSHIRE REGIMENT,

## 1899-1902.

PRINTED BY  
NORONHA & CO.,  
GOVERNMENT PRINTERS, HONGKONG,  
63 & 65 Des Voeux Road.

1904.



41





# **SOUTH AFRICAN WAR RECORD**

OF THE

**1ST BATTALION**

**SHERWOOD FORESTERS,**

**DERBYSHIRE REGIMENT,**

**1899-1902.**

---

PRINTED BY

**NORONHA & CO.,**

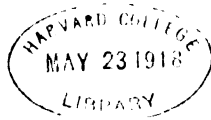
GOVERNMENT PRINTERS, HONGKONG.

*63 & 65 Des Vaux Road.*

---

**1904.**

AV 292.47  
1



*Gardiner fund*

## PREFACE.

---

This edition of the History of the services of the Battalion in South Africa, is not intended to be anything more than a foundation upon which a fuller and more permanent record may hereafter arise. It is hoped that all who have it in their power to offer any suggestions, to fill in any details which may have been overlooked, or to make any corrections or alterations, will be good enough to put themselves in communication with the Adjutant of the Battalion: to further these objects, numbered copies of the "Record" have been issued free to all those from whom assistance may reasonably be expected, and they are asked to return their copies, as soon as convenient with as copious notes as possible—making use of the blank pages provided for this purpose.

As will readily be seen, this pamphlet is the work of many hands: but the aim of all who have helped to put it together, has been to write the Record while the services which it commemorates are still fresh in our memories, and that it may therefore be of value to the future Regimental historian: and, such as it is, the book is offered to all ranks of those who served with the Battalion in South Africa—as a Memorial to those who died in its service, and as a Record for all who happily survive.

HAROLD WYLLY, Lt.-Colonel,  
*Command, 1st Battalion Sherwood Foresters,  
Nottinghamshire and Derbyshire Regt.*

HONGKONG, 31st October 1903.



## CONTENTS.

---

	<i>Page</i>
Cape Colony, by L. St. H. M., .....	1
Orange Free State and Transvaal, by C. J. L. G., .....	31
Wittebergen and Prinsloo's Surrender, by F. J. R., .....	61
Western Transvaal, by H. C. W., .....	66
Last Days in South Africa, .....	108
With No. 1 ("B") Coy. Derbyshire M. I., by F. C., .....	142
With No. 2 ("G") Coy. Derbyshire M. I., by J. H. W., .....	182





## PART I.

---

### CAPE COLONY.

The immediate cause of the Battalion being mobilized for Active Service was the disaster at Nicholson's Nek on October 30th 1899. To replace the casualties of this action three Battalions, viz., the Suffolks, the Essex, and the Sherwood Foresters, were ordered to be mobilized immediately and to be dispatched to the Cape with all possible speed. At the time many of the officers of the Regiment were on leave in England; these were directed to return to Derby and bring the Reservists to Victoria Barracks, Portsmouth.

The order for mobilization was signed on the 31st of October, and on the 7th November the first party of Reservists, numbering 94 men under Lieut. SADLER, left Derby amidst great enthusiasm. This was followed on the 8th by another party numbering 212 men under Lieut. MORLEY. The streets were packed the whole way from Normanton to the station, a distance of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles. Crowds had mounted the roofs and climbed on to the trees. There was a continual roar of cheering and singing of patriotic songs. At the station the men had to fight their way on to the platform, which was absolutely packed, and from there to the carriages. Major SHAW followed on the 9th with a party of 50. Thus on the night of the 9th, 8 officers and 356 men were quartered in Victoria Barracks, Portsmouth.

Here we were joined by Major GOSSET, lately promoted 2nd in Command of the 1st Battalion from the 2nd Battalion, and by Capt. ENGLAND from the Staff College; the former assumed command of the detachment.

For the next three days we were busy completing the men with kits, fitting equipment, etc. On the 11th November we departed from Portsmouth at a very early hour for Southampton, and the men were quickly and comfortably settled on board the *Dunera*, the transport detailed to carry us to the Cape. In the same dock the Suffolks were embarking on the *Scot*, and the Essex on the *Greek*. As we left the dock on our voyage at Noon these two Regiments vociferously cheered us, and another interchange of cheering took place as we passed the *Simla* just arrived from Egypt with the 21st Lancers.



Our first port of call was Queenstown, where we embarked the South Staffords for Gibraltar. We ran into a gale at the entrance of the Bay of Biscay which made everything uncomfortable except for the very best sailors. The ship was very crowded; everybody included there could not have been less than 1,500 souls on board. What with the pitching and the rolling of the vessel and the crowded state of the decks, the men did not have a comfortable time. However the best face was put on the matter, and when we ran into finer weather and calmer water all the past miseries were forgotten or laughed at. On the 17th of November we arrived at Gibraltar. Here the South Stafford Regiment disembarked, and marched off leaving their baggage to the tender mercies of the ship's officers! The Reservists were told off to unload it, and it was soon stacked on the wharf and left there unguarded. We embarked about 150 men of the 2nd Battalion under Major REEKS who had been doing duty at Gibraltar. The Channel fleet was anchored in the Bay, and as we came opposite each ship, they gave us "three times three and one more," which was heartily replied to by our men. At Portsmouth the Reservists had been organized into four companies. On the run from Gibraltar these were broken up; each man rejoined his old original company in the Battalion. The contingent for each company was, as far as possible, of equal strength.

In spite of the rumours that some of KRUGER's privateers were roaming about the Mediterranean, we arrived safely at Malta on the 21st November and anchored at an early hour in the Grand Harbour. The heavy baggage (for we took out all our baggage) came alongside at 9.30 a.m., and was quickly stowed away. One half of the Battalion embarked at 1 p.m.; the remainder headed by four bands, and followed by a huge crowd of gesticulating and cheering Maltese, arrived at the Custom House Landing Stage at 2.30 p.m. and from there were conveyed to the *Dunera* in lighters.

At 4 p.m. we commenced to steam slowly out of the Harbour. The sight was an extraordinary one. The ramparts were black with people cheering and waving handkerchiefs; the battleships of the Mediterranean fleet were crowded with blue-jackets; the boats of H.M.S. *Royal Oak* with oars uplifted formed an avenue for us to steam down, while all the time there was a continuous roar of cheering, and the numerous bands ashore and afloat played patriotic songs, which were sung by the whole multitude. The forts at Ricasoli, St. Elmo, and Tigné were likewise crowded with a cheering mob. The Governor, Sir FRANCIS GRENFELL, and the Admiral, Sir JOHN FISHER, after wishing us good bye on board, accompanied us for some distance in their launches.





Our last sight was a cockleshell of a boat, caught in the wash of the big steamer, and in which eight officers of the 2nd Battalion, so far as the very choppy sea would allow, were endeavouring to give a parting cheer. As soon as they stood up and were about to give a mighty shout, the boat would give a mighty bump and half would be in the bottom of the vessel. But they were not defeated, for we caught the cheer as we cleared the Harbour.

On the 24th of November we arrived off Limasol in Cyprus. Unfortunately although the hour was early, it was too dark to make out anything on shore. Two or three officers landed ; but the rest remained on board as our stay was supposed to be short. After three hours' wait the detachment under Captain RADFORD at length came alongside and was quickly embarked. This detachment was relieved by the Lancashire Fusiliers who had accompanied us from Malta. We left Limasol at 9.30 p.m. for Port Said, where we arrived next day shortly after 2 p.m. Here all the officers went on shore to stretch their legs. In the Harbour was the guardship, H.M.S. *Rupert*, the officers of which were keeping a very vigilant eye on the French Cruiser *Cassard*.

At 11 p.m. we left, being heartily cheered by the men of the *Rupert*, and to which all our men as heartily responded. Our passage through the Canal (which was safely negotiated without any misadventures) took 16½ hours. Suez was reached by 3.30 p.m., and we anchored just astern of the now famous *Ophir*. Here we were joined by General BROADWOOD (who afterwards did some very good work in South Africa) and by three officers of the Lancashire Fusiliers. We did not stop long at Suez—about two hours. During the voyage down the Red Sea we had an opportunity of examining the men. A fine body they were ; well set up, broad shouldered, strong, and real MEN, in whose hands the honour of the Regiment was bound to be safe. "Fit to do anything and fit to go anywhere" is what Colonel SMITH DORRIEN said of them at the time ; and they were. Foremost in the ranks and easily recognisable were the Reservists ; they were what they were intended to be, the "stiffeners" of the Battalion. Half the Battalion had received their baptism of fire in Tirah, and as it turned out the other half was not found wanting when it too was called upon to bear that crucial test. The boys, the physically unfit, and the men under 20 years of age, had been transferred to the 2nd Battalion, from whom we received an equal number of men who had four years' service and upwards. Life is generally very monotonous on board ship. There is only one parade a day, usually when the Commanding Officer accompanies the Captain round the vessel ; then for the rest of the day nothing



to do but to sleep or read, while the few energetic ones amuse themselves by playing quoits, etc. The whole ship from "rosy morn to dewy eve" resounds with the everlasting cry of "'ouse," varied now and then by "who says a cooler" as some enterprising man endeavours to sell a concoction of Eno's Fruit Salt and water to his thirsty comrades.

But this is no "peace" voyage. Everybody knows that when we arrive at our destination serious business will probably have to be taken in hand: and for the successful accomplishment of that business, it was necessary that the men should be kept fit. For this reason on the voyage from Port Said, physical training was started for every officer (under thirty) and man of the Battalion. For one hour a day each company underwent this exercise. The beneficial result was soon apparent. The Reservists, as was to be expected, were out of training and somewhat on the fat side: but after a few mornings of this vigorous exercise their fat turned into muscle and they became as hard and as muscular as their younger comrades. Further, the officers collected their N. C. O.'s, and lectured to them on outposts, advance guards, etc., telling them how to make themselves comfortable whilst in the field, furnishing them with numerous wrinkles, gathered from their own and other officers' experiences on active service. From early morning till after dark the signallers too were practised in taking and sending messages quickly and accurately either by Flag, Semaphore, Helio, or Lamp. Meanwhile the officers were not idle. In addition to the two parades, they attended a "Semaphore" class. In the later stages of the campaign we learned to appreciate the value of the knowledge of semaphore signalling and to recognise the fact that the time spent in acquiring that knowledge on board ship had not been spent in vain. After reaching a port, the Commanding Officer would summon his officers and, with the aid of a map, would read out the latest telegrams explaining the probable motives of each movement. The very keen officers studied assiduously their "Wolseley's Pocket Book" or some other military work bearing on campaigning, or would study the maps of the country in which our future operations would probably take place. Each rank of the Battalion, therefore, was being trained for its future work. By this constant exercise the men were kept fit and in condition, so that when they arrived at their destination they were ready for the hard work they were, almost at once, called upon to do. It was on this run from Port Said to Aden that nearly all the officers were inoculated against enteric fever. Volunteers were called for from the ranks to undergo the operation, but no one had the courage to come forward. All the officers were accordingly done a second time. Out of twenty officers





inoculated only two contracted the disease, of whom one died. It is not too much to say that our immunity from enteric fever is due in a great measure to this much scoffed at innovation. Who knows, but if the inoculation had been made compulsory throughout the Army, whether the number of deaths would have reached the appalling figure it eventually did?

On the 1st of December we arrived at Aden early in the morning and anchored off Steamer Point. The ship had to be here coaled again to carry her to Zanzibar. The work of coaling was mostly done by women; they were not nearly as quick as the coal porters of Port Said; in the middle of the day they all struck work and slept for a couple of hours. General O'MOORE CREAGH, V.C., who commanded the station and who had started his military career in the 95th, came on board to wish the Battalion "God Speed." At length the coaling was finished, and we were able to get away early on the morning of the 2nd. In addition to the usual parades, musketry was started for the Reservists and also for the Maxim Gun Detachment. A target (a piece of canvas stretched between two iron poles), was towed about 80 yards behind the vessel. Every day each Reservist fired 10 rounds. To some of the older men, the Lee Metford rifle was almost a new weapon; they had forgotten how to load; how to fill or uncharge the magazine; but a few days' practice made them proficient. The Maxim Gun also fired some rounds each day, while the officers practised with revolvers at empty bottles. The men's straps were washed in cold tea, so as to stain them a dark colour, and orders were issued that the brass work on them was not to be cleaned. The officers discontinued the wearing of the Sam Browne belt (since it distinguished them too much from the men); they donned instead "condemned" equipment, the sword being carried in the bayonet frog. On landing, however, swords were left at the Base and a Martini Metford carbine was served out to each officer.

Helmets were distributed to the men, on the khaki covers of which they sewed on a narrow green band. When the whole army was dressed in khaki without any distinguishing badge, it was very difficult to single out your own corps. By our green, the Battalion could always be recognised at once. Similarly the Northumberland Fusiliers wore a red band.

"All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy," so many evening concerts were held for the benefit of the men. At these Ptes. FISHER and RIDLEY—the Regimental comedians—were very successful. A new topical song was produced at nearly every concert, frequent allusions



being made to President KRUGER and the Transvaal War. Numerous sentimental songs filled up the programme which the men sang with a tremendous zest. Besides, we had solos on the drum, mouth organ selections, etc.

The Equator was crossed on the 5th of December: but for some reason Neptune and his amiable wife with their court did not appear. It was regretted that the time honoured custom of initiating those who crossed the Equator for the first time (and there were many on board) into the mysteries of the sea, was not carried out on this occasion.

Zanzibar was reached on the 7th December. We anchored opposite the much battered palace of the late Sultan and near his warship (once a merchant steamer) sunk by the English fleet in 1896 when the Sultan tried to throw off our Suzerainty. The masts and the funnel of the warship can still be seen standing out of the water.

The Reservists had now been on board for nearly a month, and the remainder of the Battalion for three weeks. In order to allow them to stretch their legs, permission was granted to land the men. Accordingly in the afternoon, the lighters came alongside, and the Battalion (of course unarmed) was soon drawn up on the sea shore. Then headed by the Band and Drums, playing lively airs, we marched through the narrow, evil-smelling streets to the Naval Parade Ground about two miles from our starting point—the British Consulate. Here after a few movements in drill, the men were allowed to fall out for half an hour. The excitement amongst the natives was tremendous. It was the first time any Regiment of British soldiers had landed on their island, and they were accordingly much impressed. The streets were tightly packed, a huge crowd headed the Band, and a similar crowd followed the Battalion, all gesticulating, jabbering, and laughing. The Band took their fancy most, and there was much competition amongst them to get near it; those who were lucky enough to do so indulged in wild dances like the street arabs at home. After the half-hour had passed, the men fell in again, and, accompanied by the same crowds as before, marched back to their lighters, on which they re-embarked for the *Dunera*. By 9 p.m. every man was on board again. The grand effect was somewhat marred by the Sultan's Band, which would insist, as the Battalion passed, on playing "God save the Queen" time after time. The solemn slow time of this majestic tune, mingling with the lively tunes of SOUSA's marches, completely put the men out, and while we were passing this well-meaning Band, every man was stepping differently. There is no doubt our landing was political as well as recreative. The prestige of





the English nation among the natives, at this time at low ebb, considerably increased. Later the Cameron Highlanders on the way to the Cape anchored at Zanzibar, and hearing what we had done decided to do the same, the result being that our prestige was still further increased.

The men enjoyed their outing immensely. It was a strange country, the people were strange with strange customs and the knowledge that they were the first English soldiers to land made them hold their heads higher, square their shoulders, and throw out their chests. Not a single man was absent on return to the ship, although it would have been easy for any one to do a bolt in the darkness if he had wished. Next day, the 8th, the Commanding Officer and a few selected officers paid a visit to the Sultan, and shortly after their return, the coaling being finished, we left for Durban.

General LLOYD MATTHEWS, the Commander-in-Chief to the Sultan, very kindly sent on board a present of a hundred dozen large bottles of beer for the men. The gift was much appreciated. The companies fell in on parade and in the presence of the officers each man drank his share; by this means all chance of drunkenness was minimized.

If anything the keenness of officers and men increased for the next five days. Officers studied their books in a much keener spirit, the men redoubled their energy in their parades and exercises. The straps of the equipment, the kits, clothing and boots were minutely inspected and examined. Everything was ready for disembarkation whenever the order should be given. At the commencement of the voyage we had asked each other "shall we be in time?". As we reached the different points and read the telegrams not only did we guess that we should be in time, but also, judging from the character of the fighting in the earlier battles of the war, we recognised that we should have plenty of stubborn fighting before we had finished.

On officer alone at this early period, prophesied that it would takes two years to conquer this obstinate race of farmers; though he was laughed at at the time, his words were only too true.

On the 13th of December we reached Durban, unfortunately after darkness had fallen. Everything was packed ready, the officers restricting themselves to 40 lbs. of kit. It is extraordinary how few articles make up the 40 lbs.; a coat, blanket, and the valise, and the weight runs up to 35 lbs. Most kits weighed nearer 60 lbs. than the regulation amount.

No orders arrived that night, so everybody retired to rest in view of an early disembarkation on the morrow. With the morning's light came the pilot with our orders. General GATACRE had met with a severe reverse at Stormberg in Cape Colony and needed reinforcements at once, and we had to travel to East London with all speed to go to his assistance. Just before we sailed somebody produced the morning's paper, detailing Lord METHUEN's disaster at Magersfontein, and although at the time we did not know it, we had landed at East London on the day of Colenso. So we steamed round to East London, where we arrived on Thursday evening (the 14th December) too late to land. We were therefore obliged to spend another night in a state of uncertainty.

At last our voyage of five weeks had finished : the thought of walking on dry land was most gratifying to all. But each man recognised that when he put his foot on the shore he had left the ways of peace behind him ; henceforth he was to partake of "all the pomp and circumstance of glorious war," to risk his life on many a battlefield and in many a disease-stricken camp.

The following is a list of the officers who landed at East London on the 15th of December, 1899 :—

Colonel SMITH-DORRIEN, D.S.O., .....	Commanding.
Major GOSSET, .....	2nd in Command.
Lieut. CASSWELL, .....	Adjutant.
Lieut. KELLER, .....	Transport Officer.
Lieut. TYLER, .....	Quartermaster.
Major DUNCAN, R.A.M.C., in medical charge.	
"A" Coy., Capt. ENGLAND, Lieuts. HITCHCOCK and MANBY.	
"B" Coy., Major GODLEY, Lieuts. DE PLEDGE and RHODES.	
"C" Coy., Major SHAW, Lieuts. PERCIVAL and POPHAM.	
"D" Coy., Capt. RIGBY; Lieuts. MORLEY and WILKIN.	
"E" Coy., Capt. RADFORD, Lieuts. ANLEY and WATSON.	
"G" Coy., Capt. LEVESON GOWER, Lieuts. MURRAY and WEBB.	
"H" Coy., Col. CUNNINGHAM (joined on arrival at Sterkstroom),	

Lieuts. SADLER and FRENCH.

Lieut. SADLER was appointed officer in charge of the Maxim Gun ; whilst Lieut. ANLEY became signalling officer. Lieut. DE PLEDGE was left at the Base.

In all a total of thirty officers.





The other ranks numbered slightly over 1,200.

We arrived, as already stated, at our Base, East London, late on Thursday evening. Thus of the three Battalions originally ordered out to replace casualties in Ladysmith, not one landed in Natal; Cape Colony was instead to be the starting point of their fighting career in South Africa, which in every case proved to be a creditable one.

The day of landing was boisterous. A very fresh wind blew from the south, causing the sea to run strongly and to have a nasty swell; in most South African Ports there is a bar across the mouth of the river, effectually preventing all except the shallowest draught vessels from ascending the river and mooring alongside the wharves. Landing is effected in tugs and lighters, which are brought alongside the vessel, loaded up and towed back to the wharves. East London was no exception to this rule. Three Coys.—“C,” “B,” “D” were detailed to land first. What with the rolling of the huge vessel and the cork-like motions of the lighter alongside, jumping from the gangway was not only difficult but also hazardous, and the danger of making a short jump and falling into the water was increased by the men being in full marching order and carrying their rifles. No accident however marred the proceedings, and by 9.30 a.m. the three Coys. were safely landed at the Custom House, a considerable distance up the Buffalo River.

It was intended that these three Coys. should entrain, as soon as rations had been received from the ship, and under the command of Major GODLEY should depart for the north. Accordingly all surplus kit and valises were left behind in the storehouses on the wharves, the men packing only those articles they required most in the field in their rolled great coats, which were carried on the waistbelts.

But though we waited the whole day, sitting in the railway carriages, no rations (owing to the boisterous weather) ever appeared. Meanwhile, “A,” “H” and “F” Coys. were landed and after putting away their surplus kit remained on the road near the Custom House, waiting for the first three Coys. to depart. “G” and “E” Coys. were left on board to unload the baggage. At 5 p.m. no rations having arrived, it was decided to march the six Coys. to the East London Agricultural Hall, about two miles from the Custom House. The Hall was a spacious building, constructed of corrugated iron and large enough to hold the whole Battalion. One officer per Coy. was ordered to sleep in the Hall



with the men: the remainder were accommodated in Deal's Hotel in the centre of the town.

Next morning "B," "C" and "D" Coys., under Major GODLEY, marched to the town station, quickly entrained, and, amidst the cheers of the inhabitants who had come to see us off, departed for the north. It was a strange journey. At one moment we would be toiling very slowly up a long and steep hill; the next we would be rushing down with the speed of a whirlwind, threatening to dash ourselves into the bank or over a miniature precipice at one of the many sharp turns in the run. At one or two very steep gradients the single engine would be unable to pull the heavy load; and with an increasing speed, the train would retrograde downwards. The strong brakes would, however, stop us with a jerk, and, after a short pause, the engine would make an Herculean effort and amidst the encouraging cheers of the men would carry us at last over the summit of the hill. At every stopping place, the people in the vicinity had prepared tea, coffee, cakes, etc., for the men and something more substantial for the officers in the shape of whiskies and sodas, etc. Notable among these benefactors were two ladies — Mrs. IRVINE and Mrs. GRANT — who lived at a place called Kabusie. These two ladies had waited for us till after midnight on the 15th; from 5 a.m. this morning (the 16th) they had remained at the station till we arrived at 4 p.m. They remained up till midnight to give tea, etc., to the men of "A," "H" and "F" Coys., who were following us and again were ready with tea for the third party "G" and "E" Coys. when they passed through on the 17th. Such kindness as this to the Battalion deserves to be recorded. At 3 a.m. on the 17th the leading Coys. arrived at Queenstown, the border town between peace and war. Between this place and our destination—Sterkstroom—about forty miles on, parties of Boers were reported to be roaming about at their own sweet will. It was quite on the cards, therefore, that we might meet some of these parties of knight errants. The men were ordered to be ready to turn out at a moment's notice. Each kopje, in the early flush of dawn, was attentively examined; imaginary horsemen were sometimes reported, but nothing disturbed the even tenour of our way. With the rising of the sun these fancies, like the morning mists, rapidly disappeared, and the remainder of our journey was free from care and anxiety. Sterkstroom was reached at 6 a.m. We quickly detrained and after a short wait, General GATACRE appeared and pointed out to us our camp. Letters "A," "F" and "H" Coys. under Major GOSSET arrived at 11 a.m. "G" and "E" with Colonel SMITH-DORRIEN followed at 1.30 p.m. Like ourselves the others were fêted and cheered all the way from East London. It





is, therefore, difficult to understand why this district, at this time so very patriotic and loyal, should in the later stages of the war have become a hot bed of rebellion and one of the chief dépôts of the Boer Commandos.

It might be well at this stage to give a short description of the camp and country where we remained for nearly three months.

The camp was pitched near the railway station which is over a mile from the town or rather village of Sterkstroom. The importance of the place lies in the fact that from here a line branches off to the east—to the rich coalfields of Indwe. On the west side of the railway line were encamped the Sherwood Foresters, Royal Scots, and the remnants of the 5th Fusiliers and Royal Irish Rifles—the two Battalions that suffered so severely in the Stormberg disaster. The 5th Fusiliers shortly after our arrival departed for East London for duty. The General and his Divisional Staff lived in a railway carriage, attached to an engine which was ready to steam away at a moment's notice. On the eastern side were the M. L., three batteries of Artillery, the R. E. and Departmental Corps. The whole was situated in an immense open plain about three miles wide, and bounded on all sides except the south by an intricate maze of steep and rocky kopjes. To the north and seven miles away lay a high mountain called Bushman's Hoek, held at this period by half a Battalion of Royal Irish Rifles. To the north again and 10 miles from Bushman's Hoek, a detachment of Cape Police was encamped overlooking Molteno. Sixteen miles from this town the Boers lay securely behind the strong natural position of Stormberg. To the east a detachment of Royal Scots and Cape Police occupied Pen Hoek to protect the right flank.

The force encamped at Sterkstroom was supposed to be the 3rd Division. It consisted of four Battalions, of which not one had been originally detailed to form part of this Division. The same may be said of the Artillery and the M. L. All the beautifully organised Brigades and Divisions which left England in October, were broken up on arrival in Cape Colony and units were distributed wherever they were most urgently required. The camp was defended by four small picquets, north, south, east and west, with an immense interval between each. A company picquet occupied the pumping station, five miles to the north along the railway. Beyond these picquets there were no defensive works; not a trench had been even planned; not so much as a spadeful of earth had been dug out. In these early days the value of the spade was unknown—that knowledge came later—likewise the precaution of fortifying a post however small. If the Boers occupying Stormberg

had shewn the same dash and reckless bravery as they exhibited in the later stages of the war, nothing could have prevented them from annihilating the 3rd Division, but luckily for us they were content to remain behind their defences.

Colonel SMITH-DORRIEN assumed command of the Infantry Brigade, and in a very short time, from being an open camp inviting an attack, it became an entrenched fortress; and with the right men in the trenches, practically impregnable.

In addition to the digging of trenches and the erection of fortifications, we were not allowed to forget the principles of attack and defence, which we had learnt (to the great detriment of our boots) over the rocky fields of Mellicha Bay. Nearly every morning soon after dawn the Battalion paraded for manoeuvres. Either the whole Battalion attacked a certain position, or else half Battalion fought half Battalion, or sometimes company engaged company. Up and down the steep, precipitous kopjes we used to swarm; or perhaps doubling under a fierce sun across an open plain for some considerable distance threw ourselves down, thoroughly exhausted, behind the nearest ant hill, and all this done on a cup of thin coffee before starting. As can readily be imagined this violent exercise did not commend itself to the middle-aged and portly persons. Crawling or scrambling up steep kopjes, some of a good height too, under the rays of a semi-tropical sun, or doubling over uneven ground, is not the usual exercise indulged in by those whose waists measure over fifty inches. Consequently when scaling a particularly steep and rocky kopje, there would be much puffing and blowing, much using of unparliamentary language, while these well covered persons watched their leaner comrades ascending the height, almost without an effort!

At first the attack lacked cohesion, probably due to the large number of Reservists in the ranks, but as the men became acquainted with the method of conducting it, the manoeuvre as a matter of drill could not have been beaten. One thing the men would not learn and that was the art of taking cover, it required a few bullets to teach them, but those teachers did not come until months afterwards.

It was on the Sterkstroom plain that we first tried the Attack which later became the standard method for the whole army. Everybody—officers, N.C.O.'s and men—was in the extended line, and the line was pushed forward by the men rushing indiscriminately from different parts. At the time General GATACRE was supposed to be the originator of this method; whether he was or not of course we could not tell. The men were not forgotten on Xmas Day. The good people of East London





sent huge hampers, containing cheese, plum pudding, tobacco, pipes, papers, etc. The Commanding Officer visited the men's dinners, and read out Queen VICTORIA's telegram "A Merry Xmas to you all, my brave troops, may God protect and bless you." The Commanding Officer then called for three cheers for Her Majesty, which were heartily given. Colonel CUNNINGHAM arrived on the 27th, thus completing our proper number of officers.

On the 28th of December a party of 16 men under Lieut. MORLEY was detailed as an additional escort to the armoured train, the only one in the whole of South Africa that had not been blown up or derailed. It was commanded by Lieut. GOSSET of the Berkshire Regiment. Our mission was to frustrate the raiding of Dordrecht by two Commandos from Stormberg. But the Cape Police from Pen Hoek, 250 strong, were before us and were occupying a kopje overlooking the town. We journeyed eight miles on to Clains Siding where were encamped 240 men of the Cape Mounted Rifles under Colonel DALGETTY. The Colonel was getting up when we arrived, but whilst dressing he received reports from his officers, interrogated his Kaffir spies, issued his orders for the day and, in conjunction with the C. O. of the Cape Police, formed a plan for attacking a Boer Detachment of 300 men at Xabuschagne's Nek, which was successfully accomplished a few days later. Colonel DALGETTY gave further proof of his sterling military qualities by his brilliant and successful defence of Wepener in April, 1900.

On arrival at Sterkstroom again we found the Battalion (500 strong) paraded and waiting to march to the station for conveyance to Dordrecht, there to aid in the defence of the town, but the order was cancelled much to everybody's disappointment.

Included in the force under General GATACRE was an extraordinary band led by a most extraordinary man. The band only numbered sixty; but each man had been personally selected by his Commanding Officer from the neighbourhood: each knew the country in the vicinity as well as he knew his alphabet, and each was as brave as a lion. Their leader did not know what fear meant. He seemed to be under nobody's orders except his own. He roamed over the whole country, followed by his trusty band with their banner (a black flag, on which, in white, the skull and crossbones were conspicuous) at the head of the column, seeking every opportunity of worrying and harrassing the enemy: at one time chasing their outposts into their lines at Stormberg, at another cutting off a party of Boers, now and then escaping in a marvellous manner from almost certain capture.



The name of MONTMORENCY and his famous scouts was honoured through the whole Division, they were looked up as some mighty paladins of old come to earth again. Their deeds all too soon are forgotten, the name of their heroic leader, once a terror to the Boer Army at Stormberg, has passed into oblivion except to those of the 3rd Division, who loved the man for his bravery and dash. At the close of the year this band, aided by the Cape Police, increased their activity and on the last day of the old year inflicted a defeat on a large Boer force in the neighbourhood of Dordrecht.

On the 3rd of January, 1900, the Boers feeling, no doubt, that life in general was very dull, sallied out from Stormberg with a gun which by herculean effort they drew up a steep hill called the Looperberg, about four miles south of Molteno. From here they shelled in desultory fashion the garrison on Bushman's Hoek. The garrison was reinforced by the mounted troops and Royal Scots from Sterkstroom. The Boers, however, did not wait to try conclusions, but quickly withdrew to their stronghold much pleased with their morning's diversion. This skirmish, or rather interchange of shells, became magnified by the correspondents with the Division into "the great victory of Cyphergat," and as such it appeared in the papers at home. Likewise our expedition on the 8th to Molteno (whither we were conveyed by train) to destroy a flour mill, much used by the enemy, while Colonel SMITH-DORRIEN reconnoitred the Stormberg position with the Mounted Infantry, was looked on by these correspondents (hard put to find news for their papers) as another victory, and imaginary pictures of "the Derbyshires wrecking the mill" under a hail of shell and bullets appeared in most of the London illustrated papers.

A boxing competition was organised which duly came off on the 10th of January. Every event was won by the Battalion. Also every afternoon the Band played, for the instruments and a large quantity of music had been brought up from East London. The performance was very popular, for besides the large number of officers and men of other Corps who came to listen, many of the inhabitants of Sterkstroom also attended. A military band was a novelty to most of them, and for the first time in their lives they heard some music which was neither a hymn nor a psalm.

By this time the men were in wonderfully fine condition. The numerous field days over the hilly ground, varied occasionally by hours of hard digging in the trenches had turned all their superfluous flesh into muscle. Most of them wore beards; they resembled a Regiment of





Crimean veterans rather than a Battalion of short service men. Perhaps it was on account of the fine appearance of the men that we were chosen to act as a sort of Advance Guard to the Division. Colonel SMITH-DORRIEN commanded this advance force.

On the 19th of January, we left Sterkstroom for good. Nobody was sorry to leave. The kopjes on which we had spent many a weary day, the insignificant station, where we had spent many hours on fatigue, the brown open plain, here and there relieved from horrible monotony of colour by clumps of Mimosa trees in full bloom: the sight of all these was hateful to us. With joyful hearts we set out for our new camping place—one stage nearer our friend—the enemy. Lrs. “A,” “C,” and “E” Coys. under Major SHAW relieved the half Battalion of Royal Irish Rifles on Bushman’s Hoek: the remainder marched a mile further on to Phillip’s Farm. Near us the M. I. and two batteries Royal Artillery were encamped. All the Coys. for the next few days were employed in building a stone breastwork along the front of the camp: when that was finished the Battalion built fortifications on the top of the Looperberg, 6 miles northward and occupied by 500 men of an irregular corps—the Kaffrarian Rifles. When the men could be spared from this work of fortification they were exercised in route marching, usually under the command of a captain: six to ten miles was the length of these marches.

While at Phillip’s Farm Lr. “B” Coy. was transformed into an M. I. Coy. under Major GODLEY, with Lieut. CASSWELL (who had resigned the Adjutancy and who had been succeeded by Lieut. KELLER) and Lieut. WATSON as subalterns. All the men who had been through an M. I. course in the Battalion (a few had served in the Matabeleland War) were transferred to “B” Coy. and from it the other Coys. received those men who could not ride or were too heavy for Mounted Infantry work. On the 1st of February the Detachment on Bushman’s Hoek marched to the Looperberg and there relieved the Kaffrarian Rifles, who were to form part of General BRABANT’S Colonial Division of 10,000 mounted men.

On the 1st of February, Col. SMITH-DORRIEN heard he had been appointed by Lord ROBERTS to the command of a Brigade on the Modder River. Next day he took farewell of the Battalion, making a short speech and thanking the men for their support during the period of his command. After shaking hands with all the officers and N. C. O.’s he rode out of camp to further honour and fame. Colonel CUNNINGHAM now took over command of the advance force, while Major GOSSIT succeeded to the command of the Battalion.

On the 3rd we were pushed forward another stage, namely, to Cyphergat, a small hamlet famous for its collieries, and situated at the base of the Looperberg, which rises to a height of nearly 1,000 feet. The camp was pitched near the railway in close proximity to the camps of the M. I. and Artillery, who had marched with us.

The distribution of the Battalion was as follows. On the summit of the Looperberg "A," "C" and "E" Coys, under Major SHAW; at the foot of the hill at its western extremity, "D" and "H" Coys, with Headquarters were encamped south of the Wallsend Colliery and close to a huge heap of coal dust. North of the colliery and 300 yards from Headquarters, "F" and "G" Coys, were placed, hidden from the prying eyes of roaming Boers by a rocky ridge. Field days were also discontinued; route marching was the means employed in keeping the men fit. About two miles from the camp was a large pond of muddy water but of a fair depth. Thither the Companies marched with most elaborate Advance, Flank, and Rear Guards, and picquets having been posted the men were allowed to fall out and indulge in a swim. Sometimes the Battalion, extended, were marched over the Looperberg—a task of some magnitude under a blazing hot sun—sometimes we would march, headed by the Band, towards Molteno and gaze over the intervening plain to Stormberg. From the top of the Looperberg a magnificent view is obtained. Stretching from Molteno (apparently at the foot of the hill), was a seemingly level but in reality an undulating plain. On the far side it was bounded by a lofty range of kopjes—the Stormberg Ridge. On the right of the Nek where the road from Molteno crossed this range was a two-pronged kopje; this was the famous Rooi Kop. Here on that fateful Sunday in December, the Boers by some means had drawn up a gun and spasmodically shelled the remnants of GATACRE's force as it retired. To the right a blinking heliograph announced the position of Pen Hoek; to the rear Bushman's Hoek and Sterkstroom camp still occupied by the other corps were plainly visible. The summit of the Looperberg had been heavily and skilfully fortified. High stone breastworks, 3 feet thick, defied the rush of any Boer force, especially after a long and arduous climb, while two Naval guns of a range of 12,000 yards were posted on the top under command of a Gun-nery Lieutenant. Every morning long before dawn the picquets stood to arms until it was light, when they were dismissed and the day picquet (usually the observation post) took up the duty of watching. In foggy or thick weather the night picquets remained out until the weather cleared. Every afternoon the Band played, much to the delight and astonishment of a large number of Kaffirs. Once or twice the Band





travelled into Molteno and performed in the market square. On occasions it was rumoured a good many Boers came in from Stormberg to listen to it.

Pen Hoek and Bird Siding (the latter held by three Coys. of Royal Scots) were attacked by the Boers on the 7th with no success. As a feint, no doubt, two hundred Boers occupied some kopjes east of Molteno. About 300 M. I. and one Battery Royal Artillery, under Colonel CUNNINGHAM, went out to try conclusions, but the enemy withered away, taking along with them a small picquet of Cape Mounted Rifles. (By the way in this latter corps many former soldiers of the Battalion were serving, having come out with the M. I. in 1896 under Major EVANS. After the Matabeles had been crushed, the men bought their discharge, enlisted into the C. M. R., and some had now reached high and responsible rank.)

On the 11th of February Captain ENGLAND was removed to the Station Hospital, Sterkstroom, suffering from enteric fever. For thirteen days he fought hard for life but on the 24th instant, to the great grief of the whole Regiment, his death was announced. He was buried in the small cemetery of Sterkstroom the same afternoon, the Band, "A" Coy. and all the officers off duty attending. He was the first victim among the officers and he was the only one who died of disease. About this time also the body of Colonel EAGER of the Royal Irish Rifles was brought in by the Boers. He had been fearfully mangled by one of our own shells at the attack on Stormberg in December and for two months he had lingered on in great agony attended by Boer doctors. He was buried in Sterkstroom.

On the 16th of February the M. I. under the command of General GATACRE had a skirmish with a large force of the enemy. It was intended to capture a Boer picquet at Pinnairs Farm about 8 miles from Molteno, but by a disgraceful use of the white flag the picquet escaped. Meanwhile the Boers opened from Stormberg with a gun, and a force of about 700 appeared to help their comrades. The M. I. retired on to Molteno, and the Boers retreated to their stronghold. No damage was done to either side.

On the 19th the Boers again attacked Pen Hoek and again without any result. This appeared to be their usual Monday diversion, but nothing seemed to happen except a waste of shot and shell.

On the 23rd a reconnaissance in force was undertaken. It was the first of these expeditions, which the men nicknamed "Friday Picnics." The force consisted of M. I. (Berkshires, Royal Scots, Royal Irish Rifles,



and our), Cape Police, MONTMORENCY'S Scouts, two Batteries of Royal Artillery, and 500 men of the Battalion. The infantry was used as escort to the guns. Up to 1 p.m. nothing out of the common had happened. The Boer Long Tom on the left of the Nek, distributed its favours to the M. I., the Battery (77th), and Infantry.

The 77th Battery on our left flank did its best to reach this obnoxious gun; failing that, it turned its attention to any stray parties of Boers. On the other flank the 74th Battery up to now was having a comparatively idle time. The M. I., under cover of the Artillery fire, was cautiously seeking to probe the right flank of the Boers, when suddenly a heavy continuous fusilade broke out on our right.

The 74th Battery commenced to fire rapidly; with all speed the M. I. was brought from our left flank to the right; the Infantry, (except "G" Coy, escort to the 77th Battery) followed at a slower pace to the same flank. At first the reason for these rapid manœuvres was unknown; but it soon became noised abroad that MONTMORENCY and his trusty Scouts were cut off. The M. I., helped by the guns, joined in the fray with eagerness, and after a hard and stiff fight the remainder of the Scouts were with difficulty extricated, leaving seven killed and eight wounded, while worse than all MONTMORENCY was reported missing. The rain now descended in sheets, drenching us to the skin, and utterly exhausted and dispirited, the force returned to its quarters.

Next day we heard the worst; the man above all others one would have wished to be spared, the hero of the whole Division, had been laid low by a Boer bullet in a small skirmish. It seems his orders were to endeavour if possible to draw the Boers out on the right flank. Meeting with no opposition, entirely unsupported, he pushed rapidly on until suddenly he found himself face to face with a large Boer force, and within 800 yards of the main Stormberg position. His twenty-five followers immediately took cover, and opened fire on the enemy not eighty yards away. MONTMORENCY, taking no heed of the bullets, walked along the line encouraging his men. To one of them who besought him to take cover he smilingly replied "Never mind me, the bullet is not made that will—" a stumble, and he fell dead with a bullet through his heart. Near him, with a bullet through his brain, lay Colonel HOSKIN who was serving as a volunteer in the Scouts. MONTMORENCY and his trusty band were marked men by the Boers, who had sworn to be revenged for the damage he had done them. Here was the chance for which, with the patience of hunters, they had waited. Now was the time to wipe the band out. Providence, answering to their prayers, had





delivered their enemies into their hands; it was now their duty to render these men unable to work any further mischief. No quarter therefore was given or asked in this combat; wounded men continued fighting until they dropped. The body of MONTMORENCY, stripped of his boots and buttons, etc., was brought in by his servant, Trooper O'BRIEN of the 21st Lancers, who with his master had gained the much coveted V. C. in the charge of Lancers at Khartoum. On the 25th, MONTMORENCY was laid to rest in the cemetery of Molteno, the Band, "F" Coy. and a good many officers attending.

The death of MONTMORENCY was a great blow to the whole Division, especially to the General, who is said to have shed tears when the news was brought to him. There was no one to take his place. With their leader's fall the Scouts became disorganised, and though they were commanded by another good man, Capt. MCNEIL, they did not show their old dash and reckless daring. It is said that under MONTMORENCY they would have followed him gladly to the gates of hell; in him they recognised a true leader of men, they admired his bravery and they loved the man himself. Once, long afterwards, the Scouts, now eighty strong, showed a bit of their old daring. Three days after the fall of Pretoria, they suddenly appeared in the Capital, having ridden across country from Ficksburg by themselves and through the centre of the District where DE WET was beginning, by his numerous captures, to earn his world-wide fame.

In the Peninsular War after the taking of Ciudad Rodrigo, the whole Army, it is said, mourned the loss of Captain HARDIMAN of the 45th, although included in the slain were many famous Generals. Two days after this ill-fated reconnaissance the news of Paardeberg and the relief of Ladysmith were flashed along the wires, but the men still talked of the deeds and death of MONTMORENCY.

For a week we were given a rest; both sides remained quiet and on the alert. On the 2nd of March another reconnaissance was pushed forward, the object being to discover if the Boers had abandoned the position. The composition of the force was the same as on the previous Friday. The guns took up a position on the kopje 4,000 yards away from Rooi Kop. From here they tried ineffectively to silence Long Tom on the left of the road, but instead were heavily shelled themselves, losing three horses. The General was nearly hit by a large fragment, while the Infantry were mere spectators of this Artillery duel.

A new Battalion of M. I. was now raised under the command of Major SLADEN, late D.A.A.G. Lr. "G" Coy. was broken up, and all

men from other Coys. who knew how to ride were drafted into it. This Coy. of M. I. was commanded by Captain LEVESON-GOWER, with Lieuts. WYBERGH and PERCIVAL as Subalterns.

The boxes of Queen's Chocolate arrived on the 3rd of March, and were immediately issued out to officers and men. In the camp the price of a box was 10.-; at home it was six times that price. Each box measured eight inches by four inches and contained  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb of chocolate. A great many of these boxes, sent home by the men to their relatives, were lost when the mail steamer *Mexican* sank in Cape Town harbour.

On Monday, March the 5th, the General conducted another reconnaissance. The force consisted of mounted men only. From the Looperberg we watched the black specks approaching cautiously the Stormberg position. Every moment we expected to hear the boom of our old favourite *Long Tom*. Suddenly a heliograph started blinking furiously on the left of the road, the usual position of the Long Tom, and it flashed out that Stormberg had been evacuated by the Boers. So at last, after three weary months the stumbling block in our way had been removed.

Next day we packed up our belongings and after a long march of eighteen miles, we crossed the Nek and camped about one mile from the dirty, evil-smelling Boer laager. The M. I. and Artillery accompanied us. The 2nd M. I. Coy. under Captain LEVESON-GOWER remained behind waiting for horses.

At Stormberg we halted for five days; most of the time was employed in repairing the railway, considerably damaged by the enemy in their retreat. Culverts had been destroyed by dynamite, whole yards of line had been torn up and thrown over the embankment, while the sleepers had evidently been used as firewood. Our men soon settled down to the work, and under the superintendence of those who had been employed on the railways at home while on the Reserve, quickly had the line ready for traffic.

By driblets the remainder of the Brigade arrived, chiefly by train. One day the Battalion was marched to the battlefield of the 9th of December and Major GOSSET explained the fight, pointing out the precipitous cliff up which the Royal Irish Rifles were ordered to charge, the donga where the exhausted men of the two Regiments took refuge, and were taken prisoners while asleep. The carcasses of four dead horses marked the place where one of the 15-prs. overturned in trying to clear the donga; the horses were shot and the gun, with its





breach block removed, remained in the hands of the enemy. Whether the guide, a Cape Policeman, was a traitor or not will never be known, but if he had continued his error a bit further and had advanced to his front another 500 yards, the whole of the Boer laagers would have been taken in reverse, and instead of a defeat, a victory would have lightened that "Black Week" in December.

All the officers visited the place where MONTMORENCY had been killed. At the time of his death it was freely hinted that if the General had pushed in with all the forces he had on that day, Stormberg would most probably have fallen, but an examination of the ground did not bear out this contention. As usual the whole front was intersected with kopjes, each one defended by others in its rear. Troops entangled in this maze under a heavy rifle fire were bound to come off second best, unless they were in overwhelming numbers which we were certainly not on that occasion. It was reported the General had had some intention of advancing, as he ordered two Companies of the Battalion, under Major SHAW, to advance towards the main Stormberg position, but when he heard of the mishap to MONTMORENCY he changed his mind and gave the order to retire.

Behind Stormberg were three laagers, one occupied by Transvaalers, one by Free Staters, one by Rebels. Two thousand of the latter are said to have joined their compatriots after the disaster at Stormberg. The M. I. and Artillery had followed up the retiring enemy to save, if possible, the railway bridge over the Orange River.

On the 11th March we assumed our old role of Advance Guard to the Brigade. Entraining at Stormberg Junction with all our transport, mules, carts and wagons, we were whirled through Burghersdorp, across the open plains to Knapdaar, about twenty miles from the Orange River, where we arrived at 7 p.m. This, we thought, was our destination, but a Staff Officer ordered us on. A long wait of two hours ensued, as the Boers had tampered with the railway water supply. We filled up the time by eating a hearty meal of "Bully Beef" and biscuits. When the water supply had been put right, we proceeded twelve miles on to Olivers Siding where we arrived at midnight. Fortunately for us there was a brilliant moon. Without any confusion or noise the men quickly detrained; a ramp of sleepers (which were luckily discovered in the vicinity) was constructed, and down it the unwilling mules and horses were led. Carts and wagons quickly followed suit, the train steamed away on its return journey, and we were left alone on the open veldt. The men bivouacked where they were; the rifles were piled, the barrels gleaming brightly in the moonlight; huddled up figures lying round



them showed where the men, tired out, had thrown themselves down to sleep; and soon the silence of the night was only broken by the snores of some heavy sleepers, the agonising whine of a mule, or the shrill neigh of a horse.

At dawn the men (shivering in the cold air of the morning) were roused, and after a hasty breakfast fell in on parade and marched off. For the last few days, the heavy booming of guns announced that contending forces were engaged. As we approached the vicinity of the bridge about 9 a.m. the shelling re-commenced, and the sharp rattle of a heavy rifle fire could be distinguished. One or two shells flew harmlessly over our heads as we topped the ridge, which up to this point had concealed us from view. The Battalion was halted, "C" and "D" Coys. under Major SHAW and Captain RIGBY respectively, with the machine gun, proceeded to the front, while the rest of the Battalion (four companies) turned to the right and encamped near a large farm house.

The reasons for this hurry were as follows. At Bethulie were two bridges. One carried the road, the other the railway, over the Orange River, which at this point is quite 200 yards broad. It was the object of General GATACRE to capture these two bridges intact, so as to open up another road for supplying Lord ROBERTS' Army, now approaching Bloemfontein. The railway bridge was blown up before we arrived, but the road bridge, although mined with dynamite, was still intact. The Cape Police, the advance guard of the mounted troops, threw themselves into a farm house not one hundred yards from the Cape Colony end of the bridge and immediately opened fire on the enemy, who were actually carrying a fuze to blow the bridge up. Forthwith there was a fierce struggle, the Boers endeavouring to complete their work of destruction and the Cape Police and M. I. (who had by this time arrived), equally determined that the bridge should remain in our hands. It was to help this handful of mounted men that we had been hurried up and urgent orders were despatched for the other three Battalions of the Brigade at Stormberg. All our hopes hung on that bridge. General SMITH-DORRIEN had promised that he would try and get us out of this unlucky Division, and if possible cause us to be included in the force destined for the conquest of the Transvaal. The destruction of that bridge meant that all our hopes would be shattered, that we should have to remain for some time in Cape Colony until we could be conveniently marched to Norval's Pont; and by that time the Army would have started for the north.

So far the bridge was secure; but on the night of the 12th of March Lieut. POPHAM with a small party of four men deprived the Boers of





their power of doing mischief, and it became then only a question of time how long the Boers would strive after the impossible.

As narrated above, "C" and "D" Coys. instead of following the Battalion to the camping place, continued their march to the front. "D" Coy. was detailed as escort to three Batteries which were busily engaged with two guns of the Boers. (The Artillery officers said that these guns were our own—probably captured at Stormberg.) They were firing at an immense range, viz., 5,000 yards or so. The Artillery had been trained never to fire over 3,500 yards and they were unable to devise a method of reaching these two guns. So we had the curious spectacle of two British guns, worked by German Artillerists, keeping their own end up against three British Batteries, which were unable to reach them. The loss inflicted was nil, but the moral damage was considerable. Letter "C" Coy. was now directed to relieve the Cape Police in the farm house. To do this they had to cross open ground, well marked by the Boer riflemen on the other side of the river. Across this the men in twos and threes sprinted and the whole company without accident reached the shelter of the farm. The Maxim gun followed. The walls were immediately loopholed, the gun placed so as to command the whole length of the bridge, and while one half Company slept, the other half kept up an interchange of shots with the men across the water. Occasionally this interchange of shots would suddenly develop into volleys and rapid independent, as some movement on the other side hinted at a possible rush to finish the business once and for all. The Boer gunners then suddenly shifted their pieces on to the building; their aim however was bad, their shells falling harmlessly into the soft earth without bursting. At night a small picquet was usually posted at our end of the bridge behind a barricade erected by the Cape Police; its object was obvious—namely to prevent the Boers from fulfilling their desire under the cover of darkness. On the night of the 12th Lieut. POPHAM as usual posted the picquet, and then on his own initiative he crossed the bridge alone to reconnoitre. He reported to Major SHAW, the commander at the farm, on his return, that the trenches on the other side seemed to be empty. He was directed to take a small patrol across the river and reconnoitre the ground in the vicinity of the bridge. Volunteers were called for and Privates SULLIVAN, TOPHAM, WOODS and HOLMES—all of "C" Coy.—stepped out at once. The party crossed the bridge cautiously, reconnoitred the trenches and then crept underneath the bridge. Here they found close to the base of one of the piers of the bridge two boxes, a large quantity of wire, a Mauser rifle, a still smoking pipe, and a dog, which immediately started barking.

The dog was effectively silenced. Lieut. POPHAM ordered the men to pick up the boxes, which he said contained biscuits, he himself taking the coil of wire, and thus laden they began their retreat. But the alarm had been given; the black great coats of the men, showing up against the white iron work of the bridge, easily disclosed them to the Boers, who commenced a rifle fire on the retreating patrol. In the darkness the aim of the enemy was luckily faulty and their bullets whistled harmlessly overhead. Not till the breathless men reached the farm did they discover that instead of biscuits they had been carrying dynamite! The risk they ran was terrible; one chance bullet in a box might have blown the party to pieces, but the result was worth the risk. The enemy had evidently intended to connect the dynamite with the mines that had been laid on the bridge, and by detonating the dynamite to utterly destroy the only means of crossing the river.

This gallant deed of Lieut. POPHAM and his four comrades called forth a chorus of praise from the papers and people at home, but for some reason they received no reward from the authorities. At the time, perhaps, it was not recognised what they had done. If the bridge had gone, Lord ROBERTS' Army, practically starving, would have had to depend for its subsistence on the pontoon bridge at Norval's Pont, which was being continually washed away by the floods on the Orange River. The consequence would have been that the Army could not have started for the Transvaal till months after it actually did; the sick and wounded could not have been moved to the healthy district of Cape Colony; and the mortality, high enough as it was, would have reached an appalling figure.

On the evening of the same day, "D" Coy. under Capt. RIGBY, was relieved as escort to the guns by half of "A" Coy. under Lieut. MURRAY, and reinforced Major SHAW at the farm. Meanwhile the other three Coys. had not been having an idle time. On the afternoon of the 12th, under command of Major GOSSET, they had advanced towards the river to make a demonstration while the guns changed their position. The right flank of the Battalion was protected by 25 men of our M. I. under Lieut. CASSWELL. The advancing companies came under a very heavy musketry fire as they neared the river bank, but keeping wide extensions and taking advantage of every bit of cover, they reduced the chance of being hit. When the guns had changed their position the Battalion retired, the retirement being conducted with the same precision as on the parade ground. The casualties numbered two—Corpl. NICHOLLS of "H" Coy. very severely wounded, and Pte. LENTON of "E" Coy. slightly wounded.





On the 13th the rest of the Brigade began to arrive and "C" and "D" Coys., late at night, were relieved by two companies of Royal Irish Rifles. On the same night Captain GRANT, Royal Engineers, crossed the bridge and dropped the mines and detonators on the bridge into the orange-coloured waters of the river; his presence was not suspected by the Boers and he returned undiscovered.

On the 15th of March the enemy suddenly departed leaving to us the objective of all the fighting. The Battalion became the Advance Guard again, and marched off at 4 p.m. to follow the M. I. and Artillery. We crossed the bridge and entered the Orange Free State at 5.15 p.m. The men took it as a matter of course; not a cheer was raised by them nor did the Band play an appropriate tune. To them invading an enemy's country after a successful action seemed to be an every day occurrence; they took no more notice of this unique event than if they had entered the Regimental Canteen!

The bridge was an interesting sight. Huge holes had been made every yard or so, wherein the mines had been placed; the iron stanchions—about a quarter of an inch thick—had been drilled through by bullets; a corpse lay exposed in close proximity to the Free State end; and finally the bridge was considerably damaged by shells.

Headed by the Band, we marched through the little town of Bethulie where the Kaffirs gave us quite an ovation, but the white people, mostly Dutch women, looked on us with the same interest as they would on a flock of sheep. We bivouacked three miles from the town, not very far from a large evil-smelling laager. A headless Boer was found in the morning on the confines of the camp. Next day, the 16th, the Royal Irish Rifles, now numbering close on 1,300 men, marched to our camp.

In the afternoon about 4 p.m. "Gatacre's Own," as we were facetiously nicknamed by the other Battalions of the Division, was conveyed in a train (which had been captured the night before by two enterprising men of the Cape Police) to Springfontein; a most important railway junction, where the East London and Capetown lines join. We arrived at the station as the Guards Brigade under General POLE CAREW steamed out. They had been sent down from Bloemfontein to help General CLEMENTS at Norval's Pont, but hearing there were no Boers in this district they had returned. We quickly detrained and bivouacked not far from the station on the site of an old Boer laager. Tents were pitched next day about 1,000 yards from our bivouac of last night. A few engines were found in the station, and volunteers from the Battalion, who had experience either in driving a train or in general railway work at home,



were called for to work the engines and to perform the duties of shunters, etc. Companies were sent down towards Norval's Pont to repair the line and to collect the sleepers and rails lying alongside the railway track; these were needed for a light railway now being constructed across the bridge we had saved at Bethulie.

The Royal Irish Rifles arrived on the 11th of March.

The Royal Scots and the Northumberland Fusiliers remained at Bethulie to construct the light railway. The Irish Rifles soon afterwards left for Smithfield to receive "surrenders" and collect arms.

The country round Springfontein did not lend itself to the attack and defence of rocky kopjes. An open undulating plain stretched as far as the eye could see, and across this, headed by the Band, we used to route march. The sun was fearfully hot, the "going" over the veldt bad and tiring, so that although the distance was only eight or ten miles, the men returned to camp as wearied and foot-sore as if they had done twenty miles.

On the 23rd Lieut TAYLOR with a draft of 100 men of Section "D" joined us from England. They were formed into a separate company and lettered "I". Most of them had left the Service years ago, and nearly all had forgotten a great deal of their drill and accordingly parades were held for their special benefit. They were a splendid body of men, every man standing 5 feet 6 inches. General GATACRE inspected them soon after their arrival, and remarked on their fine appearance. Lieut. RHODES, who performed the duties of Regimental Transport Officer, was able from information received from a native, to put the Intelligence Officer on to the whereabouts of a Boer wagon containing a large quantity of big gun ammunition. The scouts successfully brought the wagon to camp.

On the 27th of March. "A" Coy. under Capt RIGBY, with Lieuts. MORLEY and MURRAY as Subalterns, was detailed as a Guard of Honour to Sir ALFRED MILNER, the High Commissioner, who was on his way to Bloemfontein to confer with Lord ROBERTS. Sir ALFRED MILNER inspected the guard and complimented the men on the smart handling of their arms. The 2nd Coy. of M. I. under Capt LEVESON-GOWER arrived next day with three batteries of Field Artillery. They had, with great difficulty, managed to obtain horses; for weeks they had the saddlery but no horses, as every horse and mule in the Colony was urgently required by Lord ROBERTS' army. General SMITH-DORRIEN arrived from Bloemfontein on the same day. After he had inspected the Battalion in line a three-sided square was formed. The General told us





he had managed to prevail on Lord ROBERTS to include us among the troops destined for the advance north. Our Brigade would be composed of the Sussex Regiment, Cameron Highlanders, City of London Volunteers and ourselves. Of course this good news was received by the men with cheers.

Accordingly, next day, in obedience to instructions from the Chief of the Staff, we left Springfontein for Bloemfontein. The 74th, 77th, and 79th Batteries R. F. A. accompanied us. The order of march was as follows :—6 Bombardiers acted as scouts ; one Coy. of the Battalion, then the Battery and lengthy ammunition column ; the Battalion came next followed by all the baggage with a Coy. as rear guard. General GATACRE came to see us depart, and as the troops passed him they raised a cheer. The column was under the command of Colonel JEFFREYS, R. F. A.

As the road ran parallel to the railway, the Battalion marched along the track to avoid the dust. Halting for the night at Kuilfontein (6 miles), Jagersfontein (12 miles), and Kruger's Siding (9 miles), we arrived at Edenburg (16 miles) on April the first. Here the programme was upset, no doubt in consequence of DE WET's victory at Sanna's Post. We were haunted by the fear that we would never leave the 3rd Division, and the orders we here received from the Chief of the Staff seemed to foreshadow that, after all, we should be left on the Lines of Communication.

As soon as we camped, "E" Coy. (made up to 150 men) under Captain RADFORD, was ordered to proceed up the line by train to protect the many bridges from Bethanie to Bloemfontein. This company returned to Bloemfontein in two days' time and remained with Headquarters.

Next day, the 2nd, "A" and "C" Coys. under Major SHAW, relieved two Coys. of Scots Guards under Major BADEN-POWELL at Reit River bridge 8 miles beyond Edenburg. Two Coys., "E" (on their return from the north) and "I", remained at Headquarters. "D" Coy. under Capt. RIGBY proceeded to Van Zyl Spruit, where there was a fine bridge to protect ; "F" Coy. under Captain WELDON returned to Jagersfontein. One Coy., (Lr. "H") under Lieut. FRENCH, acted as escort to the three Batteries which continued the march. But he too was stopped at Bethanie, at this time occupied by a Militia Battalion, viz., the E. Kents. At all these posts fortifying was the order of the day.

The detachment at Reit River was reinforced by the Highland Light Infantry, 1,100 strong, and two guns, and when these left—to form part

of the column organised by General GATACRE for the relief of the M. I. of the Irish Rifles and Northumberland Fusiliers— which had been surrounded at Reddesburg by DE WET, fresh from his victory over BROADWOOD at Sanna's Post—the North Cork Militia (600 strong) arrived to take their place. Under the superintendence of an Engineer officer, sent for the purpose, the bridge became safe from destruction. A complicated wire entanglement above and below the bridge prevented the Boers from creeping down at night and mining the piers. The ground in the vicinity was cut up by trenches, bringing a heavy cross fire to bear on all approaches to the bridge. Every day there was a continuous flow through the post of men, horses, and mules, all going north. Every Regiment in the Service was represented in these small columns— Guardsmen, Highlanders, Linesmen, Cavalrymen, Artillery, besides many Colonial Corps, such as Lumsden's Horse, the Ceylon Volunteers, etc.

At all hours of the day and night heavily laden trains made their way to Bloemfontein. Lord ROBERTS' army was still on short commons; rumours were heard of the sufferings of the sick and the appalling death rate. Filled with supplies and medical comforts, the trains were sent forward without any delay. Yet it took nearly two months to accumulate enough supplies to warrant the army starting on its onward march. Train loads of sick and wounded passed through on their way to Cape Town; all were glad to escape from Bloemfontein.

Much the same sort of work went on at the other detachments; digging and entrenching all day long. No one was allowed to wander from the different posts; field days and route marching were therefore abandoned. Long before dawn all the posts stood to arms; patrols were sent out; when they returned and reported all clear the troops were allowed to dismiss provided that there was no mist or rainy weather. The Eighth Division—the “starving eight”—under Sir LESLIE RUNDLE, concentrated at Edenburg and from there hurried on to Reddesburg with the object of stopping General DE WET's intended raid south. Early in April a Volunteer Coy. under the command of Captain TURNER LEE, with Lieuts. KINGDOM-ELLIS and WRIGHT (the latter a full fledged burgher), arrived at Edenburg. It was composed of men from all the Volunteer Battalions of the Regiment.

On the 17th of April the Riet River detachment received the long desired orders to march to Bloemfontein. On the 20th the detachment left Riet River (and the 3rd Division) being relieved by 400 men of the Suffolk Regiment. “H” Coy. joined in at Bethanie. With us were the





City of London Volunteers—one of the Battalions of our Brigade which was now to be commanded by Colonel BRUCE HAMILTON with the rank of Major-General.

On the 23rd of April this detachment arrived at Bloemfontein, where a draft of 94 men of Section "D" joined us from the Rest Camp. Our camp was on the south side of the town about one mile from the fort, which used to be the depôt of the Free State Artillery. In the vicinity were vacant spaces for the other Battalions of the Brigade, of which one only had arrived, namely the City of London Volunteers. In the cemetery (quite close to our camp) Lieut POPHAM found the graves of men of the 45th Regiment who had died in 1848. With nobody to look after them, the graves were covered with weeds and the inscriptions on the tombstones were nearly obliterated.

Major SHAW was appointed Brigade Major to our Brigade; the command of the detachment therefore devolved on Captain GREEN, who had joined us from the 2nd Battalion two days before leaving Riet River.

Sudden orders reached the detachment on the 25th of April to march to Glen, 16 miles north of Bloemfontein. Transport was the great difficulty, as, hearing we were likely to be here for some time, we had brought up to the camp all the surplus kit, sent up from East London. By some means it was all brought back to the station, where Lieut. MANBY on his own responsibility, and much against the wishes of the Railway Staff Officer, loaded it on three trucks, and attached the trucks to the train for Glen. Our detachment numbered 420 men. Led by four buglers and one drummer, who every now and then beat a roll while the buglers blew a lively march, we traversed the principal streets of Bloemfontein. From all sides soldiers and civilians ran to see what the strange noise meant and the march in a very small way resembled our march through Derby. At Glen the C. I. V.'s, who had preceded us by one day, were encamped.

The Headquarters and five Companies ("D", "E", "F", "I", and Vol. Coy.) arrived at 6 a.m. on the 27th having trained nearly the whole way from Edenburg. The Battalion bivouacked among the trees, which border the Modder River—a sluggish stream of the colour of pea soup. The fine railway bridge over the river had been blown up by the Boers in their retreat, but a pontoon bridge had been constructed, also a temporary wooden bridge to carry the railway.

On the same day General BRUCE HAMILTON and his staff arrived. Late in the afternoon the Camerons put in an appearance, followed next day by the Sussex. The Brigade—the 21st as it was numbered—was now



complete and ready for the forward march to Pretoria. At last we had obtained what we had hoped for, viz., to be included in the Army for the north. The Battalion had commenced the Peninsular War in the 3rd Division, and by a curious coincidence the beginning of the South African Campaign found it again in the 3rd Division—known as the “unlucky third.” The ill luck still pursued those Battalions which remained in the Division. The Royal Scots did not leave the Orange River Colony till months after the fall of Pretoria, and then they garrisoned the fever stricken district of Barberton. The Royal Irish Rifles remained in the Orange River Colony, while the Northumberland Fusiliers suffered another mishap at Nooitgedacht in the Transvaal, losing five hundred men as prisoners.

Up to this our life in the field, although not a bed of roses, had not been very exacting. The privations and miseries, suffered uncomplainingly by the troops of Paardeburg and Pieters Hill, had not been our portion. Henceforth we were to learn what it meant to march long distances on half and sometimes quarter rations; to sleep in wet clothes in a pool of water; to spend sleepless and nerve-destroying nights on picquet; to take part in a modern battle; to be under a heavy and accurate fire of shot and shell from the best marksmen with the best weapons in the world. Other Regiments had helped to dye this unfortunate country a British red; we had now to provide our quota to stain it a deeper colour so as to render it permanent.

L. ST. H. M.





## PART II.

---

### ORANGE FREE STATE AND TRANSVAAL.

During Lord ROBERTS' halt at Bloemfontein, the Battalion held posts on the Bloemfontein-Springfontein line south of the capital. The Battalion, acting as an advance guard to General GATACRE's force, had crossed the Orange River after the engagement at Bethulie Bridge, about the same time that the Commander-in-Chief's army drove the Boers from Abrahams' Kraal, and entered Bloemfontein. In consequence the line to the south, with all rolling stock, etc., fell into the hands of the British.

General GATACRE ordered the Battalion to proceed by rail from Bethulie to Springfontein Junction, which was occupied on 17th March by General GATACRE from the south and by General POLE-CAREW from the north, almost simultaneously.

The Commander-in-Chief's six weeks' halt at Bloemfontein was more or less a period of comparative inaction on the part of the British forces, with the exception of the operations against DE WET in the South-Eastern Free State around Wepener. The Battalion, which marched north along the line, leaving Springfontein on the 30th March, took no part in the operations. From 1st to 25th April, the Battalion on the lines of communication found the following detachments:—

Van Zyl's Spruit.—“D” Company under Capt RIGBY.

Jagersfontein Road Station.—“F” Company under Capt WELDON.

Edenburg.—The Headquarters under Major GOSSET, with “E” Coy. under Lieut. ANLEY, “I” Company (a draft of Section “D” Reservists who had arrived at Springfontein under Lieut. TAYLOR), and the Volunteer Company (just arrived under Capt. TURNER-LEE, with Lieuts. ELLIS and WRIGHT).

Riet River.—“H” Company under Lieut. FRENCH.

Bethanie.—“C” and “A” Companies under Major SHAW and Capt. GREEN.

At this period the greatest vigilance was necessary on the part of the Battalion, as CHRISTIAN DE WET's force was known to be to the east, and the line was blocked with supply trains for the Bloemfontein army.

The firing at Reddesburg had been heard at Bethanie and Edenburg, and at the former place General GATACRE concentrated his relieving force in vain.

DE WET's attempt at Wepener failed, and a huge force, under Generals FRENCH, IAN HAMILTON, COLVILLE, RUNDLE and SMITH-DORRIEN, moved out from Bloemfontein towards Ladybrand, with the object of cutting off the Boers on their retirement north. To DE WET's south was the Orange River; to the east Basuto Land and the hostile tribes; to his north a matter of some ten Brigades of British troops; and to his west the railway line, held from Van Zyl's Spruit to Bethanie by the Battalion.

Affairs were in this state when Lord ROBERTS unexpectedly concentrated his remaining troops for the northward move—*unexpectedly*, since of the mounted troops General HUTTON's Brigade alone remained to cover his advance.

On 24th April Captains RIGBY and WELDON, having been relieved by Militia Companies, marched to Headquarters. On the following day the Riet River and Bethanie detachments went north and the Headquarters marched to Bethanie.

It was the eve of Lord ROBERTS' advance; DE WET was striking north, and troops were being massed from every direction. On the evening of the 25th a train conveying the Suffolk Regiment ran through Bethanie.

On the 26th the last shower of the rainy season fell as the Headquarters half battalion marched into Kaffir River Station, where it immediately entrained.

At 3 a.m. the train passed Bloemfontein and as day was breaking reached Glen, and joined the 21st Brigade under Major-General BRUCE-HAMILTON.

Major SHAW was appointed Brigade Major, and Lieut. POPHAM Brigade Foraging Officer.

The Brigade was composed as follows :

- 1st Battalion Royal Sussex Regiment (Lieut.-Col. DONNE).
- 1st Battalion The Sherwood Foresters (Major GOSSET).
- 2nd Battalion The Cameron Highlanders (Lieut.-Col. KENNEDY).
- The City Imperial Volunteers (Col. MACKINNON).
- Companies R.E. and A.S.C., Bearer Company, etc.
- Battery Royal Field Artillery (Major CAMPBELL).





The Officers of the Battalion were as follows :—

Commanding Officer, Major E. A. G. GOSSET.  
Second in Command, Major & Bt. Col. G. G. CUNNINGHAM, D.S.O.  
Adjutant, Lieut. R. H. KELLER.  
Quartermaster, Lieut. F. TYLER.  
Transport Officer, 2nd Lieut. H. V. RHODES.  
“A” Company—Capt. GREEN.  
“C” Do. —Lieut. MORLEY.  
“D” Do. —Capt. RIGBY, 2nd Lieut. WILKIN.  
“E” Do. —Capt. RADFORD, Lieut. ANLEY.  
“F” Do. —Capt. WELDON, 2nd Lieut. GILSON.  
“H” Do. —Lieut. MURRAY, 2nd Lieut. FREND.  
“I” Do. —Lieut. TAYLOR 2nd Lieut. WEBB.  
Vol. Do. —Capt. TURNER-LEE, Lieuts. ELLIS and WRIGHT.

On the 28th, being Sunday, the Brigade paraded for divine service, and on the following day crossed the Modder River and marched in a north-easterly direction to Klein Ospruit, the first of many bivouacs. The Boer position lay in a south-easterly direction from Karee Siding.

From Klein Ospruit the bivouac fires, scattered over the veldt for miles to the north of Bloemfontein, showed that many a Brigade was that night in its place, ready for the following day's advance. On Tuesday—the 30th—the enemy offered but a half-hearted resistance to the first step northward of the Bloemfontein army.

General BROADWOOD's 2nd Cavalry Brigade succeeded in turning the Boer left, supported by the 14th Brigade which came from the south. General TUCKER with Pom-Pom and long range musketry fire easily turned the Boers from their position at Vlakkfontein, while the 21st Brigade on the right occupied Schanskraal practically unopposed. In the meantime, to the east, DE WET was breaking north and more serious operations were in progress. The fighting around Thaba Mountain had already lasted eight days; General SMITH-DORRIEN's Brigade (the 19th) particularly had been heavily engaged, and DE WET had kept General IAN HAMILTON's large force at bay from Israel's Poort to Houtnek, where the fighting started early on 1st May. General IAN HAMILTON had helioed for reinforcements, and the 21st Brigade was immediately despatched to his aid. A weary 20-mile march in the broiling sun, in column of double companies across the rough uneven veldt, brought the Brigade to Houtnek as the last shots of the action were being fired and the Boer force was slipping northwards.



The whole army now lay at Lord ROBERTS' disposal for his advance. The Commander-in-Chief formed a main body to move along the line, of General POLE-CAREW's Division, Generals STEVENSON's and JONES' Guards Brigades. The Brigades under Generals WAVELL and MAXWELL, and the Division under General TUCKER, were to move to the right and in touch with the Commander-in-Chief's Force. General FRENCH, with Cavalry Brigades under Brigadier Generals DICKSON, PORTER and GORDON, was to cover the advance of the main body and secure the left. An "Army of the Right Flank" was concentrated at Steyn's Spruit (Jacobsrust, near Houtnek) under General IAN HAMILTON. This force was designated "The Winburg Column"—which town was to be made the primary objective. The Highlanders under Generals COLVILLE and MACDONALD were to support the Winburg Column. General RUNDLE with the Eighth Division was to remain in the Houtnek district.

The composition of the Winburg Column was as follows\* :—

2nd Cavalry Brigade—Brigadier General BROADWOOD.

2nd Mounted Infantry Brigade—Brigadier General C. P. RIDLEY.

19th Brigade—Major-General SMITH-DORRIEN.

21st Brigade—Major-General BRUCE HAMILTON.

With each Brigade was a Battery of Artillery, the whole under Col. WALDRON, R.A., who also commanded a Brigade Division and two 5-in. heavy guns.

On 3rd May the "Winburg Column" marched north to Isabellafontein in pursuit of the Houtnek Boers, who had taken up a position at Welkom Farm on the Klein Vet River covering the town of Winburg. The following day the column advanced against the Welkom position, which proved to be a horse-shoe shaped ridge, the left of which rested abruptly on a formidable kopje known as "Impediment Hill."

The engagement lasted but three hours. The Mounted Infantry advanced on the right against Impediment Hill, while General Broadwood moved against the enemy's right, becoming somewhat heavily engaged. The two Infantry Brigades, under General SMITH-DORRIEN, forced the centre cutting the position in two. The Battalion advanced on the extreme left of the Infantry, supporting the Cavalry. They were anticipated at the western extremity of the horse-shoe position by Captain ROSE of the Horse Guards who charged and took the position, losing

---

\* 2nd Cavalry Brigade—Household Cavalry, 10th Hussars, 12th Lancers.

2nd M. I. Brigade—Colonels LANE, BAINBRIDGE, LEGGE and DE LISLE's Corps.

19th Brigade - Gordons, D.C.I.L., Shropshire L. L. and Royal Canadian Regiment.

21st Brigade—Already detailed.





his life. The Battalion in widely extended order and under a heavy shell fire from the rear (i.e., across the "horse shoe") occupied the hill, where they spent an uncomfortable half hour under an accurate shell fire and without adequate cover. However, only one man was hit—No. 6167 Pte. R. CUTTS, "D" Coy.—although a shell carried another's rifle from his hand.

The action was successful in opening the road to Winburg, into which town the force marched on the evening of the following day without a shot being fired (except by the mounted troops). As the men were not yet hardened (in spite of the five months they had already been on active service) the continuous marching began to tell on them, and at Winburg, (which was subsequently garrisoned by the Highland Brigade) all men unable to march remained behind under Capt. WELDON.

2nd Lieut. MANBY had already gone sick with enteric fever and pneumonia and was subsequently invalided home.

Captain GREEN was thus left without a Subaltern, and 2nd Lieut. GILSON took over command of "F" Company. In three months' time when the Battalion had dwindled down to 250 men, but four company officers (Lieuts. SADLER, MORLEY, ANLEY, and WILKIN) remained. On the evening of the 6th the column, now re-christened "Hamilton's Column," marched to Dankbaarfontein, where a halt of two days was necessary to allow General TUCKER to come up on the left preparatory to engaging the enemy in their strong position on the Zand River.

General BOTHA had concentrated a large force, and in this well chosen position intended to defend Kronstadt and the country to the north.

On the 9th, Hamilton's Column moved along the Ventersburg-Winburg road to Bloemplaatz, 2 miles south of the Zand River. Lord ROBERTS' two Divisions bivouacked some five miles to the westward. After leaving Winburg the two columns had marched within sight of each other until night closed in and General HAMILTON pushed forward. The dust of the main Army and its transport had extended for miles across the veldt.

On the evening of the 19th, General SMITH-DORRIEN, with memories of Paardeberg and foreseeing possibilities of great loss of life in the Zand River bed, suggested that the main drift should be reconnoitred and occupied that night; and the Battalion was accordingly moved on after dusk.

The right half Battalion under Col. CUNNINGHAM crossed at the drift unopposed and entrenched itself on the northern bank, "F", "H,"

“I”, and the Volunteer Company remaining on the Bloemplaatz side. The enemy's position extended from the west of the railway line and fronted along some 24 miles of watershed to the Kool Spruit valley to the east.

General FRENCH was to operate to the British left wheeling on to Ventersburg Road Station from the east. Generals POLE-CAREW and TUCKER were to hold the centre, on and to the east of the railway line; while Hamilton's Column retaining its place, was to advance on the extreme left of the enemy's position. General BRUCE HAMILTON was to attack—the Cavalry supported by the Mounted Infantry endeavouring to turn the flank. General SMITH-DORRIEN was detailed to hold the drift and ensure the safe passage of the convoy.

During the afternoon of the 9th Col. WALDRON's big guns had searched the position, one Boer gun unmasking in reply.

Soon after daybreak on the 10th lyddite shells again burst on the hills to the north for half an hour, the challenge remaining unanswered.

At 8 a.m. the mounted troops under General BROADWOOD crossed near the junction of the Zand and Kool Spruit, the 21st Brigade marched out of the Bloemplaatz bivouac, and the guns again opened fire all along the south bank. Twelve Boer guns facing General HAMILTON's and TUCKER's forces immediately replied, heavily shelling the Ventersburg-Winburg Road drift, occupied by the Battalion. Soon afterwards the Mounted Infantry came under long range rifle and Pom-Pom fire on the British right.

At about 11 a.m. the 21st Brigade deployed for attack, the City Imperial Volunteers supporting the Sussex and Sherwood Foresters, while the Camerons remained in reserve. The Sussex and Sherwood Foresters advanced together and a Battalion of General WAVELL's Brigade (E. Lanes.), changing direction half right, came up on their left. While the main attack was in progress, a large force of Boers, which BOTHA had apparently secreted in the neighbourhood of the Kool Spruit Valley, attacked Hamilton's Column in rear of the Cavalry and directly from the flank. General SMITH-DORRIEN immediately met them with the Canadians and Gordons, and severe fighting took place near the junction of the two streams. On General SMITH-DORRIEN applying for reinforcements in the form of another Battery, the C. R. A. ordered back General BROADWOOD's guns, with the result that that General, hearing heavy firing to his rear, hesitated to advance when the two Infantry Battalions cleared the position, and the Boers retired unharassed into the Ventersburg valleys, 50 odd prisoners only being





taken by Hamilton's Column. The casualties among some 30,000 men were comparatively insignificant, and mostly confined to General FRENCH's division on the extreme left and HAMILTON's on the right. The Battalion had no casualties, although the Sussex lost eleven killed and wounded. That afternoon the two armies were on the north bank of the Zand River and General HAMILTON had occupied Ventersburg town. The 21st Brigade bivouacked that night on the Erasmus Spruit.

On the evening of the 11th the Brigade moved on to Twisneit, still marching parallel to the main advance.

On the following day General FRENCH drove the Boers from the kopjes south of Kronstadt, and that evening the three Infantry Divisions converged on to the town, whence the so-called Free State Government fled to Lindley.

In a fortnight Lord ROBERTS had moved 30,000 men from Bloemfontein to Kronstadt. Hamilton's Column had marched a matter of 140 miles in 14 days, during which it had fought four engagements, while General BULLER was now moving up through the north of Natal on Laings Nek and was at this time in occupation of Newcastle.

On the 14th the Commander-in-Chief inspected General HAMILTON's force and congratulated all ranks on the success of their operations.

By the fall of Kronstadt the great northern Free State base of operations fell into the hands of the British. STEYN, however, was at Lindley and a force under PIET DE WET was known to be about that district. Hamilton's Column was accordingly ordered to march east.

On the 15th May the Brigade moved round the town to Kaalfontein Road and three days later marched into Lindley, the Boer Government retiring north again to Heilbron.

With the exception of the pursuit of CHRISTIAN DE WET in July and August, the Lindley march was perhaps the most trying and wearisome that the Battalion performed. The country of the Valsch River valley was uneven and intersected in every direction by innumerable dongas and water courses, in consequence of which the transport was invariably late. In addition to this the weather was now bitterly cold at night, and, fatigued after the day's march, the men were obliged to wait patiently for their blankets (they carried but one) and food until the transport arrived. Lieut. ELLIS and many men were overcome by exhaustion, while Lieut. FREND had been placed upon the sick list with dysentery.

Before continuing the pursuit of President STEYN to Heilbron, the Brigade remained at Lindley throughout the 19th.



The Companies of the Battalion which picqueted the town that day observed parties of the enemy on all sides, and a playful interchange of long range shots was kept up all day.

The Mounted Infantry relieved the picquets soon after daybreak on the 20th, and the Battalion, acting as rear guard to the Column under Col. CUNNINGHAM, recrossed the Valsch River to the heights north of the town.

The enemy, who had earlier attempted to cut off "I" Company picquet, shewed up all around and musketry fire was audible in every direction, although the exact state of affairs remained still a mystery to all. Suddenly the M. I. picquet, with PIET DE WET's men at its heels, was seen approaching the town at the gallop. As they moved out of the little town to the north, the Boers had already entered from the south and were in time to get a few shots in before the Mounted Infantry reached the cover of the river valley. Large parties of Boers were also seen moving along the southern bank; and, as the main body of the Column was already several miles on the march and the advanced guard was actually engaged on the Rhenoster River, things began to look serious.

On the Horse Battery of the rear guard opening fire, PIET DE WET and his force seemed suddenly to disappear into the earth, and Col. CUNNINGHAM ordered the Battalion to move on with the convoy.

Five miles along the Heilbron road news came that the advance guard was engaged, and the same Staff Officer brought the intelligence that Col. MAHON had relieved Mafeking on the 15th, which was received with cheers.

The Battalion had been on the march again for half an hour, when heavy musketry fire broke out suddenly in rear, and soon afterwards the entire mounted rear guard came in at the gallop.

Major GOSSET had time to get into position—fortunately Col. DE LISLE had held the enemy long enough for that—otherwise the experience of the 29th May a year later (Vlakfontein) might have been forestalled and PIET DE WET and his Burghers might have charged the Infantry unprepared and in close formation. Instead of which the Battalion and a Battery of Artillery, carefully posted in position, awaited him; so contenting himself with the 60 odd casualties he had already inflicted on the Mounted Infantry, he wheeled about again for Lindley.

The Battalion again was fortunate in having nobody hit.





Those who were with the Battalion that night are scarcely likely ever to forget it. Guns, mounted troops, transport, and the convoy safely reached the divisional bivouac at night fall—the Battalion of the rear guard at 8 a.m. the following morning !

Owing to some mistake no guide was sent back and, after being 14 hours on the march, and wandering aimlessly about the veldt for some hours, tired, hungry and exhausted, the Battalion lay down on the banks of the Rhenoster, chilled to the backbone and without food, fuel or blankets. During the night communication was obtained with Divisional Headquarters and the Battalion rejoined the Column when it was marching out of bivouac next morning.

This movement of Hamilton's Column turned for Lord ROBERTS the formidable and strongly held Rhenoster position.

Two days later the Column drove HANS BOTHA out of Heilbron. The affair was entirely a Cavalry business.

The occupation of Heilbron, an important railway terminus, compelled President STEYN again to depart with his portable Downing Street paraphernalia.

In the meantime the main Army moved steadily on up the railway line, doing but one side of the rectangle of which Hamilton's Column traversed three, and on the great Queen's last birthday the whole army lay around Vredepoort.

That night from around the bivouac fires of the four Divisions of weary soldiers, again and again came strains of "God Save the Queen," whose health they drank in rum.

On the morning of the 25th, Hamilton's Column, with the hills of the "promised land" across the Vaal in sight, crossed to the left flank of the main Army and marched some fifteen miles in a north-westerly direction.

At sunset on the 26th May the Band of the Battalion played it into bivouac at Wonderwater, on the north bank of the Vaal.

General FRENCH crossed the Vaal at Parys, Lord ROBERTS at Vereeniging. General HUNTER had entered the Transvaal some days before from Fourteen Streams, Generals BADEN-POWELL and PLUMER from Mafeking, General CARRINGTON from the north, General BULLER was through the Drakensburg Passes, and the Transvaal, after six months' war, was at last invaded.

Lord ROBERTS, still keeping to the railway line, advanced on Germiston, while General FRENCH on the left pushed on towards the Klipriviersberg, with General HAMILTON in support.

In two days, that is by the 28th, with General FRENCH's guns going continuously in the hills ahead, the Column reached Cypherfontein, whence the tall chimneys of the Rand were discernible.

General FRENCH, at the close of the day's engagement, reported the Klipriviersberg clear of the enemy, who had fallen back upon the less extensive position of the Rand itself, where the Boers intended to defend their "Golden City" to the last.

On the morning of the 29th May, Hamilton's Column moved off in a north-westerly direction, and almost immediately the Mounted Infantry became engaged with parties of the enemy who had returned during the night. General FRENCH, without necessitating any deployment on the part of the Infantry Columns, dislodged these advanced parties, engaged the Boers on the kopjes in the Klip River valley beyond, and also drove them back upon the Rand itself. However, as this time the Cavalry Commander was compelled to dismount several of his Regiments and attack in extended order, it was evident that the Infantry, which was by now winding through the Klipriviersberg Passes, would soon be required.

At the base of the steep, smooth slopes of the Witwatersrand, running from Florida six miles to the eastward, lay a rocky ridge, terminated, or nearly so, at the eastern end by a formidable hill, known that day as "One Tree Hill," but in reality already christened "Crowsnest." To the west lay a "Burnt Hill," entirely isolated from the longer ridge, although tactically covered and affording reciprocal defence.

South of this kopje lay the Dornkop ridges, the closing scene of Dr. JAMESON's pilgrimage. The valley lay parallel to and north of the Klip River.

Such was the enemy's position as viewed by General IAN HAMILTON from the pass high up in the Berg. He took little time to decide upon his plan, for the Division never halted, but, once through the Klipriviersberg, wheeled to the left and marched parallel to the enemy's line on to Dornkop, where General FRENCH, supported by General BROADWOOD, was already engaged. The Mounted Infantry soon afterwards came in touch with the enemy on the right.

General HAMILTON placed his Infantry Division under the command of General SMITH-DORRIEN, Col. SPENS taking over command of the 19th Brigade, which formed up at 10 a.m. facing "Crowsnest," on which the 5-inch guns opened fire.

General BRUCE HAMILTON marched his Brigade to Dornkop, of which General DICKSON's Cavalry was already in possession.





By twelve o'clock all the enemy's advanced parties had fallen back on their position, where they awaited the general advance. "The Infantry will carry the heights by a frontal attack, the four Cavalry Brigades will turn the enemy's right flank *viâ* Florida, the left being secure on a deep morass."

The troops all along the line advanced at about much the same time; and as they moved from Dornkop and the adjacent heights down into the valley, the Artillery fire from either side grew fiercer.

The Battalion was on the extreme left of the British advance, almost within touch with the leading Cavalry Regiment of General FRENCH's force (the Inniskillings), with the exception of "I" and "F" Companies, which had been thrown out in advance, occupying a wood 800 to 1,000 yards in front of "Burnt Hill."

In the centre of the valley the Battalion came under a long range rifle fire, but as the ground afforded good cover for the men, none were hit. General BRUCE HAMILTON, in order to allow the Artillery fire to have greater effect and to give time to General FRENCH to turn the flank, then halted the Battalion, while the C. I. V. moved forward on the right. Later in the day the Sussex came up on their right, while the CAMERONS remained in reserve on Dornkop, where they lost men from the enemy's Artillery fire. The three firing-line Battalions of the 21st Brigade were engaging "Burnt Hill," while the 19th Brigade was directed against "Crowsnest," or "One Tree Hill," to which position the Johannesburg Police were still gallantly clinging at 3.30 p.m., at which hour the action was at its height. At a quarter to four, while the Inniskilling Dragoons and the C. I. V. were losing life on the flanking slopes of Dornkop, a tremendous shrapnel and lyddite fire was maintained against "Crowsnest." The Gordons lay at a decisive range from the Zarp rifles; "Burnt Hill" still held out and checked the Cavalry advance; the C. I. V. were still 800 yards from the position, when the Boers on "Crowsnest" fell back, and the Gordons, crowning the foremost ridge immediately, came under a murderous fire at close range. The Highlanders, at grave cost, had taken nothing more than a false crest, to which however they bravely clung until 4.15 p.m. when, without orders from their General, they rose as one man and cleared the hill with great loss of life. Almost simultaneously the Inniskillings on the left swung round "Burnt Hill," and the Sherwood Foresters, moving forward from the valley, occupied the hill from the centre, as the City Volunteers came up from the right, while the Boer Army cantered away northward, leaving the Rand Gold Fields to the British.



As the Battalion reformed the sun set, but the Companies did not find their way to "Crowsnest Hill," where the transport had been parked, until 8.30 p.m.

Owing to the sun setting so significantly at the close of the battle, many a wounded man must have died before daybreak undiscovered. The night, though moonless, was lit everywhere by the lyddite shells in long lines of creeping veldt fires, which were not extinguished by the frost until early morning.

As a few straggling kopjes still lay before him, the General ordered the Brigade to be under arms at daybreak and "F" Company moved out in advance.

The scene, as the sun of the 30th rose on the slopes of "Crowsnest," cannot be entirely ignored. Here, near by the spot where a group of men had cooked their dinners and bivouacked during the night, a killed corpse; another almost between the wheels of a transport waggon. They lay everywhere among the rocks—a group almost opposite the spot where the General had pitched his tent; and everywhere there was a débris of rifles, water-bottles, fragments of shell and bandoliers.

Leaving the Gordons to their dead, the Column dragged itself through Florida and bivouacked on the Aurora West Mine Claim. The battle of Dornkop, for which the clasp "JOHANNESBURG" was awarded, let the Commander-in-Chief, after a slight engagement near Germiston, into the city, where, for ten years, taxation and corruption had reigned.

That the Boers played their game to the last, a copy of the last edition of the "Diggers and Miners' News," dated 29th May, (the very day of the battle) fully testified. In this last of a noble line, some imaginative genius had written of us, "Their Infantry are even now storming the Klipriviersberg and are again and again driven back!"

The Gordons came last into the bivouac, and the sound of their pipes was drowned by cheer after cheer which echoed over the deserted gold-fields.

The appearance of our Battalion, as it marched across the Witwatersrand, was little to be wondered at. After a month's forced marching, with a very occasional halt for purposes of co-operation, accompanied by long days in actual touch with the enemy, it was only to be expected that at this time boots were out at heel, clothes were in rags, faces were bronzed and chins unshaven, and that the arrival of Captain WELDON with stores, boots and clothing was most welcome.





The few trains that got up to Pretoria and Johannesburg in the first week of June must have relieved a great weight from Lord ROBERTS' mind. Hamilton's Column had throughout been on three quarter rations and sometimes even half, and the 30th May found the men reduced to their Emergency Rations.

On the 1st of June the Brigade changed its bivouac to Goldmines, a few miles north of Bramfontein, and on the following day the Column moved on again, in a north-westerly direction, against the Transvaal capital.

At about midday on the 4th, General IAN HAMILTON, marching still N. W. for a big turning movement, received intelligence that the Commander-in-Chief expected little or no resistance at Pretoria, and, changing direction, converged on to the Main Column at Six Mile Spruit. Here the big naval guns were vigorously shelling a few interested (or inquisitive) spectators in the Pretoria Forts.

Boers, however, showed up to the west, but Col. DE LISLE getting them on the run, followed them almost into the town itself.

That night Mr. WINSTON CHURCHILL and the Duke of MARLBOROUGH rode into Pretoria, and Lord ROBERTS was placed in possession of the municipal keys.

On the 5th June at 1 p.m., from the bivouacs scattered around, the whole army marched into the town and passed before the Commander-in-Chief in the Church Square in column of route with bayonets fixed.

The mounted troops were occupied in the hills to the east, but the Infantry of all three divisions was all present (with the exception of General WAVELL's Brigade which remained in Johannesburg), namely, the Brigades of Generals JONES, MAXWELL, STEVENSON, SMITH-DORRIEN and BRUCE HAMILTON.

The Battalion has not only to be proud that it took part in this historic march past, but that it passed in the finest style, to the tune of the "Young May Moon," the Band being one of the few present and playing nearly the whole Army past the Commander-in-Chief.

On the morning of the 6th June, while the officers were eyeing the Sunnyside Villas, with a view to selecting the most comfortable mess, and the men were speculating on the facilities of Pretoria in the matter of food for 20,000 hungry mouths, the order came to march at once, and, what seemed harder—southwards again.

One cannot say cheerfully, neither can one say without a murmur, but, to confine oneself to facts, the Battalion did march south again from Pretoria, fifteen miles through a cloud of dust to Irene, and never a man fell out: which fact speaks for itself.

If a company officer did hear a murmur of discontent now and then, the man, at least, did not grumble at the order, he grumbled at the necessity: as who would not? For the necessity was this, that not only was the war not over, but that, while Lord ROBERTS had been carrying all before him in the north, CHRISTIAN DE WET had gone from success to success in the Free State, and that the line between Kronstadt and the Vaal was utterly demolished, while Generals BOTHA and DE LA REY, encouraged by the successes of the Free Staters, were in the Schwartz kopjes with 12,000 burghers.

Consequently Lord ROBERTS, weakened as his great force was, was obliged to take the initiative, in order, not only to protect his lines of communication, but to secure the newly conquered capital itself. A blow had to be struck at BOTHA's threatening force and that without delay.

The enemy lay in a great position, extending from the north of Pretoria (General DE LA REY's position) to Bronkhorst Spruit—the scene of the disgraceful piece of treachery at the outbreak of the '81 war. His advanced posts were scattered throughout the Schwartz kopjes to the Pretoria picquets.

The composition of Hamilton's Column had received the following alteration, namely, that General SMITH-DORRIEN's Brigade had been replaced by General GORDON's Brigade of Lancers (9th, 16th, and 17th). At Pretoria Capt. TURNER-LEE, Volunteer Company, and Lieut. WEBB, went on the sick list; Capt. SADLER rejoined from the Bloemfontein Rest Camp; and Capt. WELDON was appointed D.A.A.G., and afterwards Brigade Major, to the 19th Brigade.

On the 9th the 21st Brigade moved from Irene siding a few miles north of Garsfontein.

On the 10th an armistice for the intended "peace negotiations" was declared, which came abruptly to an end on the following day, when the Boers opened fire on the British Cavalry; these promptly drove them back on the Kleinfontein ridge, thus opening the scene of the action of Diamond Hill.

Lord ROBERTS determined to hold the centre of the Boer force with General POLE-CAREW's troops, ordering General FRENCH to force back





the opposing Boers to the west under DE LA REY. The main Boer Army was south of Elands River station on the Delagoa Bay Railroad, in the neighbourhood of Diamond Hill, against which General HAMILTON was to advance, General BROADWOOD turning the left flank of the enemy.

The result of the day's fighting on 11th June was as follows.

To the west, DE LA REY roused the Cavalry Division at daybreak by means of a mixed shell, Pom-Pom and rifle fire, causing them to retire in some confusion, while the Boer General seized the opportunity of slipping in between General FRENCH and the main body.

To the east, Generals BROADWOOD and GORDON not only failed to find the enemy's flank, but the famous Sanna's Post Battery ("Q") for the second time narrowly escaped falling into the enemy's hands, and both Brigades lost heavily. General POLE-CAREW was not heavily engaged, and General BRUCE HAMILTON was alone (and the success counted for little or nothing) in taking the Kleinfontein Ridge with the C. I. V. and Sussex, the latter being aided by the Sherwood Foresters Volunteers and Captain GREEN's Company ("A"). The state of affairs on the evening of the 11th was most serious; firing was taking place actually in the direct rear of Hamilton's Column. At Kleinfontein the outlook was not bright, for the Boers had fallen back on Diamond Hill, a much more formidable position to the rear, which however the General decided to carry at all costs on the morrow.

The Battalion was under arms soon after daybreak and at 6.30 a.m. moved off in extended order.

The Camerons were back with the cow guns, the Sussex were to advance on the left, the C. I. V.s in the centre, while four Companies of the Sherwood Foresters on the right were to move against the eastern extremity of Diamond Hill, the remaining four Companies being held in Reserve.

The right half Battalion, accompanied by Major GOSSET, Col. CUNNINGHAM, and Lieut. and Adjutant KELLER, comprised the following Companies:—

"A" under Capt. GREEN—C. S. MURPHY.

"D" under Capt. RIGBY and 2nd Lieut. WILKIN—C. S. GIRLING.

"E" under Capt. RADFORD and Lieut. ANLEY—C. S. TOBBELL.

"F" under 2nd Lieut. GILSON—C. S. RANDALL.

The machine gun, Lieut. SADLER.



The Officers with the Reserve Companies ("C", "H", "I", and Vol.) were Lieut. TAYLOR (in command) and Lieuts. MORLEY, MURRAY and WRIGHT. At about 8 a.m. the guns opened fire upon the enemy's position, but failed to evoke one single shot in reply.

Capt. GREEN was then ordered to move out on the right and "feel" the position with his Company; almost immediately the Boer guns opened fire.

At about 9.30 a.m., "D", "E" and "F" Companies were ordered to move up in support of "A" Company, which was heavily engaged at about 900-1,000 yards.

Capt. GREEN had taken up a position near a mud wall enclosure upon a rise, affording good facilities for cover, and from which he was returning the enemy's fire.

At 10 a.m., "D" Company came up on the left of "A", which had now lost men, Capt. GREEN himself having been helped back severely wounded, Col. CUNNINGHAM taking over command of the Company. The British Field Batteries at Kleinfontein were time after time put out of action by a well aimed and concentrated fire from Diamond Hill, thus permitting the Boer gunners to turn their attention to the advanced Companies and Lieut. SADLER's machine gun.

The other two Battalions were engaged on the left, when at 1 p.m. General BRUCE HAMILTON ordered a general advance against the hill.

"D" Company moved on the left supported by "E", while "F" Company advanced in support of "A".

Before continuing, a brief description of the country may be found necessary. Diamond Hill may be said to run from west to east, and was bounded by a northern valley, a southern valley, and Donkerpoort on the east. The formation of the hill was an escarp, that is to say, the hill was formed by a long and gentle gradient on one side and a steep slope on the other—*i.e.*, the southern valley from which the troops advanced. This southern slope was concave and coverless and surmounted by a rocky "Krantz"; and had General BOTHA's men meant to hold it, a more formidable position could scarcely be imagined.

However, if once driven from the Krantz, all would have been up with them, as the smoother northern slopes offered little chance for a hurried retreat in safety. Therefore the enemy resolved to allow the British Troops to occupy the grassy heights of Diamond Hill upon which they knew they could, with perfect safety to themselves, concentrate a heavy cross and enfilade fire from the rocky semi-circle of hills beyond





the shallow northern valley and the great eminence of Donkerpoort, on the east of Diamond Hill. This hill which one may call "Donkerpoort," projected out into the southern valley and thus offered opportunities for an enfilade fire along the low ground. It must be borne in mind that Diamond Hill was comparatively coverless (from the British point of view, the "Krantz" facing south) whereas the surrounding hills were not only rocky and sprinkled over with boulders, but were defended by innumerable and well constructed sangars. One cannot but remark some similarity in the position to that of Spion Kop and the hills around Acton Holmes and Vaal Krantz.

The Battalion must ever be proud of its advance on Diamond Hill. With sloped arms and taking their dressing by the right—the threatened flank—under rifle fire and a heavy enfilade fire from the guns and pom-pom on Donkerpoort, the Companies marched forward as if on parade, with the exception that the men passed jokes amongst themselves. As each line ascended the hill, belt after belt of pom-pom shells flew along it. But neither these nor even our own lyddite shells, from five thousand yards in rear, served to shake the steadiness of the men, who, extended in column of sections, marched across the rise of the hill. No sooner were the troops in possession of Diamond Hill than gun, rifle, and pom-pom opened upon them from every direction.

"E" Company moved to the left, while "A" and "D" changed direction half right: one section of "F" wheeled completely to the right and opened fire on the Boers enfilading the position from Donkerpoort. Color-Sergt. RANDALL leading the remainder of the Company forward and filling up gaps in the frontal firing line.

The time for parade movements had gone, but the absolute discipline the men had retained throughout the advance in a great measure ensured the success of the day; for, when the hill at 1.30 p.m., was ultimately gained, the Company Officers still found their men absolutely in hand, and were thus enabled to carry out the Commanding Officer's orders with regard to the movement already mentioned.

For the remainder of the afternoon the fight only diminished in its fierceness to again continue hotter than before, while the half Battalion clung to the position. The casualties—3 men killed and 2 Officers and 21 N. C. O.s and men wounded—give no idea of the severity of the fire; and the many almost miraculous escapes in the Battalion little more.

## CASUALTIES.

---

### *Men killed.*

No. 5647, Pte. BELFITT, F.  
„ 3525, „ NORMAN, G.  
„ 5796, „ PIDCOCK, A.

### *Died of Wounds.*

No. 2856, Pte. MOAKES, R.  
„ 5602, „ SHERRIN, T.

### *Officers, N.C.O.s and Men wounded.*

Captain GREEN, T. H. M.  
Lieut. MURRAY, A. S.  
No. 2889, Sgt. ROWELL, E.  
„ 3954, „ SIMPSON, F.  
„ 4566, „ THORPE, T.  
„ 5531, Cpl. ROPER, E.  
„ 4376, Dmr. RISTE, A.  
„ 1281, Pte. MERRON, P.  
„ 3289, „ TOMLINSON, T.  
„ 4652, „ COOPER, F.  
„ 5827, „ FOSTER, A.  
„ 2929, „ GOODE, W.  
„ 3218, „ HOLROYD, J.  
„ 2319, „ REYNOLDS, J.  
„ 2712, „ CHAMBERS, D.  
„ 4803, „ CHEETHAM, W.  
„ 5080, „ RICHARDS, S.  
„ 5532, „ BAXTER, R.  
„ 2444, „ GILL, W.  
„ 5674, „ KINGSTON, C.  
„ 5751, „ EVERITT, A.

Most of the casualties were in “A” and “F” Companies, the section of the latter Company on the right alone having two killed (Ptes. BELFITT and MOAKES) out of ten men present.

The two Battalions on the left were also heavily engaged throughout the afternoon, and in addition to severe frontal fire suffered from all enfilading bullets from Donkerpoort.





At 3 p.m., the 1st Coldstream Guards, from General POLE-CAREW's force to the west, supported the position and suffered some loss from shots dropping on the reverse slope. Bullets were even falling among the transport which was still in the neighbourhood of Kleinfontein.

Shortly afterwards the 2nd Mounted Infantry, under Col. DE LISLE, led the attack (dismounted) on the Donkerpoort Hill.

At 4 o'clock a half-hearted counter-attack was delivered by German mercenaries against the Hill from the nek and easily repulsed. But still the strain continued. General BRUCE HAMILTON (perhaps remembering Spion Kop where he was A. A. G. to General CLERY) ordered up the 82nd Battery. Horses on Diamond Hill were superfluous, and the gunners and their officers man-handled their guns to the crest. Their appearance upon the sky-line was a signal for the enemy to redouble their fire and perhaps the hottest ten minutes of the entire day followed, the exposed Battery suffering most severely.

The nerve-strained half Battalion waited expectantly until Major CONNOLLY at last opened fire and then, with renewed confidence, fired heavily into the hills in front.

Then, under the shrapnel and rifle fire from Diamond Hill and the M. I. maxim, which had gained a footing on Donkerpoort, the Boer fire perceptibly slackened. There had been times throughout the day when the least sanguine felt doubtful: but now, first "H" Company, led by Lieut. MURRAY (who was immediately wounded in the foot), then "I", followed by Lieut. WRIGHT and the Volunteers, and finally "C" supported the firing line on the hill, and all grew confident of success, feeling at last that they had the mastery over the enemy's fire; and the men along the firing line were shouting for ammunition to pay their debts to General LOUIS BOTHA.

As night fell the flashes of the Mounted Infantry rifles were seen getting further and further towards the north of Donkerpoort. Their maxim gun was still at work after dark, when the firing on Diamond Hill had finally died out.

Nothing but an open stretch of veldt to the Delagoa Bay railroad lay behind the enemy, and on the night of the 12th General BOTHA retired across it, while the British Cavalry pushing forward on the following day, only just failed to cut off the big guns at Bronkhorst Spruit.

The Clasp "Diamond Hill" was granted for the action, but it must be remembered that not only the Troops that took Diamond Hill, but also the containing force around Pretoria gained the distinction.



On the following day the Column, following on the Boer line of retreat, marched to Elands River station on the Delagoa Bay line. For the same reason which caused the Bloemfontein delay and owing in some measure to the Free State mishaps, Lord ROBERTS was unable to continue his advance east and Hamilton's Column was ordered to return to the capital after a day's halt.

Accordingly the Battalion, leaving Elands River on the 15th, reached Pretoria again on the evening of the following day, bivouacking for the night on Mr. MARK's farm near Silverton.

After the capture of Pretoria, the backbone of the Boer resistance was broken. In consequence, the remaining sixty days that the Battalion spent upon the march that year were, compared to the upward march, devoid of interest. With Pretoria as a goal and with the excitement of constant touch with the enemy, the month of May passed rapidly enough; but during the greater part of June, July, and the first two weeks of August, such was by no means the case. The stretches of waste country in the Free State, the weariness of the war, the lack of an object to be retained in view, and the invisibility of the enemy spelt monotony to all. Even the most sanguine came to think the war would never end and everyone, with the sole exception of Lieut. WILKIN, refused to see anything of beauty or interest in the everlasting barbed-wire fences. For a hundred days and a thousand miles the steps of the Battalion fell monotonously across the veldt.

The Commander-in-Chief ordered the Column back into the Free State (now and henceforth the Orange River Colony) *via* Heidelberg. On the 19th, General IAN HAMILTON marched again through Irene, and bivouacking the following day at Blackfontein, entered Springs on the 21st.

After an intermediate bivouac at Grootfontein, the town of Heidelberg was occupied on the 23rd, the Mounted Infantry losing somewhat heavily in driving off VILJOEN's Commando from the town. During the engagement General IAN HAMILTON fell from his horse, breaking his collar bone, and General HUNTER, who entered Heidelberg with General HART's Brigade from the west the following day, took over the command.

On the 27th, General HUNTER marched to the Oceana Coal Mine, and, continuing due south, reached the Vaal at Villersdorp Drift on the 29th, crossing the following day.





On 1st July, the Force occupied Frankfort, again forestalling a rival Column, for the Highland Brigade marched in the following evening under General MACDONALD.

An empty convoy from Frankfort was despatched to Heilbron and the City Imperial Volunteers were, at their own desire, detailed as escort. When the town was occupied, some N. C. O.s and men of the 4th Battalion, captured at Roodeval and left sick at Frankfort, were liberated and those fit to march retained with our Battalion.

The enemy under Generals PRINSLOO and DE WET had concentrated in force around Bethlehem. Generals RUNDLE, PAGET, CLEMENTS and BRABANT in the eastern Orange River Colony were already in the neighbourhood, and thither General HUNTER was directed to advance, taking the Highlanders with him.

He divided his large Force into three separate Columns, and pushed on himself with the Mounted Troops, directing Generals BRUCE HAMILTON and MACDONALD to advance in support in parallel Columns.

On the 4th, the Brigade marched south from Frankfort, and bivouacking at Rietfontein, Paardehoek and Stompkop during the nights of the 4th, 5th, and 6th, reached Reitz on the 7th, where the Battalion was immediately ordered to escort an empty convoy to Heilbron, rejoining the force near Bethlehem with the supplies.

Capt. RADFORD and 113 N.C.O.s and men, incapable of further marching, and Lieut. POPHAM on the staff, remained with the Brigade at Reitz and subsequently took part in the surrender of PRINSLOO, gaining the Clasp "Wittebergen." The nights still continued bitterly cold, but fortunately some Boer tents had been found at Frankfort, and the Battalion carried these with it to Heilbron.

The Convoy, under the command of Col. CUNNINGHAM, proceeded along the Frankfort-Heilbron road on the 8th July and bivouacking at Rustfontein, Blau Krantz and Wellest, reached the latter place for the second time on the 11th.

There it was reloaded on the 12th, on which day Col. CUNNINGHAM left for Pretoria, where he was granted the temporary rank of Brigadier and took over the command of a newly-formed Brigade for the Lydenburg advance. Colonel EWART, Cameron Highlanders, of the Headquarter Staff, relieving him in command of the convoy.

On the 13th, the convoy proceeded along the well-remembered Lindley-Heilbron road, and some little interest was accorded by the sight of familiar kopjes.

On the night of the 14th, the Battalion camped on the south bank of the Rhenoster, on almost the identical spot where it had passed the never-to-be-forgotten night of the 20th of May.

The camp of the 15th was none other than Vaalbank, the scene of PIET DE WET's attack on the rearguard. But the road was deserted, and the sound of distant guns was no longer to be heard ; all the Boers were certainly at Bethlehem.

On the 16th, the convoy entered Lindley, garrisoned by the Bedfordshire Regiment with the Malta Mounted Infantry, under Capt. MARSHALL of the Second Battalion of our Regiment.

Lindley was the most ill-used of all these small veldt market-towns. The inhabitants, peace-loving people, suffered much from the repeated stings of conscience. One day a British Column would enter Lindley and Lindley would sing "God save the Queen" and hoist the Union Jack ; on the following day the English would depart and perhaps DE WET and his burghers would ride in, when Lindley sang the "Volkslied" and shook its fist at the dust of the distant column. Lindley was capable of this once in a way—but sixteen evacuations were too many and resulted in disaster, while the loyal townsmen lived on in grave misdoubt between the *sjambok* and the Provost Marshal.

The town was evacuated on the 17th when the Bedfords and the Malta M. I. marched south to Sterkfontein with the convoy.

Capt. MARSHALL had reported Boers in large numbers during the march, and later in the day it appeared that DE WET with 1,500 men and guns was coming north on the same road.

DE WET had escaped from General HUNTER's cordon which was as yet not complete, and on the night of the 17th his laager lay a few miles from the convoy at Sterkfontein.

Colonel EWART expected an engagement on the 18th, but daybreak on that day revealed no trace of DE WET who had slipped away during the night.

General HUNTER, however, had despatched General BROADWOOD, with the 2nd and the Lancer Brigades and General RIDLEY's M. I. in pursuit, and the force came upon the convoy on the morning of the 18th. General BROADWOOD, hearing that the enemy was in considerable force, resolved to deprive the convoy of half its escort, and preferring the more hardened to the stronger Battalion, ordered us to accompany his mule transport as a permanent baggage guard.





From Reitpoort, bivouacking at Riversdal, Roodepoort and Vaal-krantz, the Battalion marched with the Cavalry Column nearly 70 miles in three days.

DE WET fled across the Orange River Colony, in a S-shaped line, with General BROADWOOD on his heels, the transport moving direct from bivouac to bivouac. On the 20th, the Cavalry engaged the enemy, leaving the Battalion miles behind and with only the sound of the firing to march upon.

On the 21st, General BROADWOOD could find no trace of the enemy, and guessing that DE WET had crossed the line, pushed on to Roodeval, where he learnt that a train had been captured and the rail again destroyed.

On the 23rd, the Battalion was railed down to Serfontein, but the order was immediately cancelled and it returned to march after General BROADWOOD again, who had ran DE WET to earth in the neighbourhood of Vredepoort.

Troops, under orders from Army Headquarters, were now on the move from every direction against DE WET's force.

On the 25th, the Cavalry remaining at Vleispruit, the Battalion moved to Wonderheufel, while General KNOX moved out from Kronstadt to Rhenoster Kop. Lord METHUEN came down from Potchefstroom and held the Vaal drifts to the north of DE WET.

Reinforcements continued to arrive until the 7th of August, by which time DE WET was surrounded by a considerable force under Lord KITCHENER. The Battalion continued to hold the position at Wonderheufel, General HART's Brigade coming up in support.

Patrols, generally under Capt. RIGBY, were almost daily engaged.

On the 2nd, a sharp Artillery duel took place. Later on the same day, a wood party under Lieut. GILSON engaged the enemy, and had two casualties—Lee.-Corpl. TYERS and Pte. HOWE being wounded.

On the night of the 6th, DE WET slipped through Lord METHUEN's posts and re-crossing into the Transvaal, retired into the Gatsrand. Lord KITCHENER at the head of the Mounted Troops, who had been replaced by a Yeomanry Brigade under Lord CHESHAM, started early on the 7th in pursuit, and General HART with six Infantry Battalions, (Northumberland Fusiliers, Somersets, Sherwood Foresters, Dublin Fusiliers, R. Canadian Regt. and Shropshire L. I.) by a series of forced marches remained in support, marching by day and night to Welverdiend,



on the Krugersdorp-Potchefstroom line, which was reached on the 12th, the Column having marched *via* Vaalkrail, Grosterland, Driefontein, and Heilsfontein, the route lying through Vredepoort, Parys, and Lindique Drift.

DE WET had crossed into the Gatsrand at Bufflesdoorn Pass and was in the Mooi River valley. General SMITH-DONIHEN, marching to Welverdiend and leaving his bivouac fires still burning at Bank, only just failed to cut off the enemy at the former place. Lord METHUEN, pushing on with his small mounted force, by keeping constantly on the enemy's western flank prevented DE WET from escaping towards Klerksdorp. General IAN HAMILTON held the Magaliesberg Passes and General CUNNINGHAM marched his Brigade westward from Commando Nek.

On the afternoon of the 12th, Lord KITCHENER was sanguine of success.

Leaving 100 men under Lieuts. TAYLOR and GILSON at Welverdiend, HART'S Column pushed on that night to Cypherfontein, and on the 15th reached Reitfontein *via* Klip Krantz.

In the meantime, General DE LA REY, north of the Magaliesberg, had not been idle, but by his own initiative saved DE WET. Firstly, he laid siege to Rustenberg, where General BADEN-POWELL'S force was encamped, and whither General HAMILTON was ordered to proceed to relieve the town. Secondly, he surrounded Col. HORE'S force at Elands River.

General IAN HAMILTON'S absence from Oliphant's Nek gave DE WET his chance, and on the evening of the 15th the following wire from Lord KITCHENER came through Welverdiend: "DE WET has escaped through Oliphant's Nek. I thought it was held by our people. I am hastening to the relief of HORE."

On the following day, the Cavalry reached Elands River and relieved the gallant defenders after 10 days' siege, during which they had suffered most severely.

The Battalion halted at Waterval and on the 18th received orders to march to Krugersdorp by "easy stages,"—a boon which supplies would not admit of.

From Waterval, *via* Leeuwfontein, Vlakfontein (the scene of the engagement of the following year), Cypherfontein and Reitvlei, the Battalion, 250 strong, under Capt. RIGBY, with Lient. SADLER second in command, and Lieuts. MORLEY, ANLEY and WILKIN alone remaining of the Company Officers, marched into Krugersdorp on the 22nd August;





(Major GOSSET was then on the sick list suffering from a broken rib caused by a fall from his horse on the preceding day.)

The exact length of the march can never be truly estimated, but a distance of over 1,150 miles was covered in 116 days, of which two weeks were spent at Wonderheuvcl.

After the "de Wet trek," we all naturally looked forward to some rest, seeing that there were a number of troops in garrison all rigged up in splendid suits of new pattern khaki, with polished boots, Stohwasser leggings, etc., looking to the war-worn soldier as if a de Wet trek would make them know what real soldiering was !

We were joined on reaching Krugersdorp by Lieut. DE PLEDGE from the Base with about 100 "pick-ups," and by Lieut. NEWBOLD with a draft of 23 Volunteers. Two Subalterns—ARMSTRONG and MAYALL—also joined on appointment.

On the 28th, "A", "D", "E", "I", and the Volunteer Coy. proceeded down the line to Bank station and the Battalion Headquarters moved to a position on the south side of the town of Krugersdorp.

On the 31st, the Volunteer Coy. rejoined Headquarters, as orders had been issued that all the Volunteer Coys. were about to be sent down country *en route* for home: a number of details who fell out at Welverdiend on the DE WET trek also rejoined.

On the 1st September, another Coy. left Headquarters, this time "H" Coy. under Lieut. SADLER, proceeding to Welverdiend: Lieut. and Adjutant R. H. KELLER was sent down to East London for change of air, taking over command of the Base Coy. which was to be removed to Capetown.

On the 13th, Lieut. MURRAY, who had been wounded at Diamond Hill, rejoined, together with 2nd Lieut. POPHAM, the latter officer taking over the duties of Acting Adjutant.

On the 28th, Captain RADFORD with 2nd Lieut. WEBB returned to the Battalion, the former had commanded the details of the Battalion in General BRUCE HAMILTON'S Column at the PRINSLOO surrender: 140 men came with him, most of whom had earned the "Wittebergen" clasp to their medals.

On the following day the details which had arrived of "A", "D" and "E" Coys. proceeded up the line to join their Coys. On arrival of the train at Bank, Capt. PHELPS went on with a strong party (by train) with a maxim to reconnoitre the line between Bank and Welverdiend,

and when some six miles out, was suddenly fired upon by a party of Boers who were hiding in one of the dry nullahs. He opened fire with his maxim, but this unfortunately jammed at the third round. Private HOOKE of "H" Coy., one of the details who had joined the previous day, was killed.

On the 1st October, we received from friends at home, a very large supply of good things which had been collected by Mrs. GOSSET, the wife of our Commanding Officer; altogether some 70 cases of "comforts" having been sent out by this lady.

On the 4th, General BARTON left Krugersdorp, taking with him our Transport Officer, Lieut. RHODES, as the T. O. to his Column *on loan*. This loan was not repaid until after the conclusion of hostilities some 23 months later!

On the 7th, orders were received to hold the Volunteer Coy. in readiness to return to Capetown *en route* for home, and the Battalion to entrain for Bank under sealed orders.

On arrival at Bank station at about 12.45., we received orders that the Headquarters were to occupy a post about half way between Bank and Welverdiend. We proceeded as speedily as possible, "I" and "F" Coys. furnishing the advance, flank, and rear guards, whilst "C" Coy. remained on the train. We found our station consisted of a solitary ganger's hut with a signboard on the railway which gave the place the name of "Oberholzer," but how far it was to the town or village of that name we hardly knew. One thing we quickly found out and that was that we were some  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 miles from water. However we had ample for present requirements so that we were not troubled.

The Headquarters now consisted of Letters "C", "F" and "I" Coys., "H" Coy. being at Welverdiend, "A", "E" and "D" at Bank. Lieut. ANLEY had a detachment from one of the Bank Coys. at Reitfontein Bridge near Bank. Entrenching was now the order of the day, the country for a good distance round the camp being quite flat; it was therefore necessary to entrench with all speed, and also to furnish a strong escort with our water-cart. In a few days the trenches were considered finished, and all time was then devoted to putting up barbed-wire fences, entanglements, etc. This continued all the time we occupied the post, and at the finish the post was very strong indeed.

On the 15th we were informed of the death of Lieut. H. K. ATTFIELD of our 2nd Battalion, who was killed near Ventersburg Road Station. The official summary read as follows:— "Lieut. ATTFIELD is a great loss,





he having been more than once brought to the notice of the Commander-in-Chief for gallant conduct."

Our Garrison was reduced on the 28th, "F" Coy. being ordered to rejoin "H" Coy. at Welverdiend: this caused an alteration to be made in the defences, the circle of the trenches having to be made smaller.

On the 6th November, we were reinforced by a draft of 1 Sergeant, 2 Corporals, and 47 men from the 2nd Battalion, while Lieut. RITCHIE joined the Battalion on the 17th from the Malta M. I., and Lieut. WILKIN left on the 27th for Capetown, he having been selected for employment with the West African Field Force.

Orders were received on the 29th to send a Coy. to Bufflesdoorn Pass on the Gatsrand. Capt. MORLEY with "C" Coy. proceeded, having with him Lieut. DE PLEDGE, while 2nd Lieut. NAPIER joined the party at Welverdiend; the strength was made up to 140 of all ranks. The defences on account of this great reduction of our strength had again to be altered.

General FRENCH, who was now in command of the line, visited our post on the 3rd December and was well pleased with the defences. He gave command of the section of the line from Krugersdorp to Welverdiend to Major GOSSET.

"C" Coy. which went to Bufflesdorn was soon trekking with General FITZROY HART'S Column, but on arrival at Bank it was railed to Potchefstroom, passing through our camp on the 8th.

On the 14th, Capt. and Adjutant KELLER arrived from Capetown relieving 2nd Lieut. POPHAM who had been acting for him.

On the 23rd, 2nd Lieut. M. B. RIMINGTON arrived on appointment, he having been nominated for a commission by the Governor of Cape Colony. On the following day we were strengthened by 20 men of Marshall's Horse, who brought down 20 horses for use of the Battalion for patrol duty. Christmas day was quite a gala day for the troops, large supplies of fowl, pork and vegetables being obtained from the villages round about. A supply of plum puddings from the Field Force Canteen was received overnight, so that it was "Peace and Plenty" in camp, and a free issue of beer from the canteen funds was authorized at dinner.

A party of our Bank mounted men went out on the 27th to reconnoitre in the direction of the Gatsrand, when several of them were surrounded and had to surrender, while two or three others rode off to avoid



capture, Private WESTWOOD being knocked off his horse mortally wounded. He was at once taken to Krugersdorp on a passing train, but was dead on arrival.

Owing to the continual reports that the Boers were massing on the Gatsrand with the intention of attacking Bank station, extra precautions had to be taken and the troops stood to arms most mornings about daybreak.

On the 31st, Captain RIGBY having occasion to draw the attention of Mr. DE VILLIERS of Driefontein Farm, in the Gatsrand, to irregularities taking place there, and no notice being taken, sent out a patrol, under 2nd Lieut. RIMINGTON, of about 15 of our men and 18 of Marshall's Horse, these latter being mostly recruits who had not yet seen a shot fired. The Commandant Bank (Capt. PHELPS) assisted by sending out about 30 of our men under 2nd Lieut. MAYALL.

The patrols met just north of the Gatsrand about 5 miles from Oberholzer. They then took the first ridge which was unoccupied. Lieut. MAYALL with the Bank party now took up a position, east of the farm and covering it, on a range of low kopjes running N. to S. In the meantime 2nd Lieut. RIMINGTON saw DE VILLIERS' cattle being driven slowly down from a steep range of hills S. of the farm: he noticed also about 7 Boers passing along this ridge. Suspecting a trap, he left 6 men to hold the kopje on his right flank and advanced with the remainder down towards a wood which extended about 600 yards N. of the farm—a square, fairly dense wood. With 12 men he advanced to the farm: on getting round the corner of the wood about 50 yards from the farm, the Boers from the steep bushy ridge south opened a terrific fire, and shot one horse: the rest of our patrol took shelter behind the farm and at once opened fire, but Acting Corpl. CUNNINGHAM (3094) was shot dead through the head, and Trooper NORTHEAST (Marshall's Horse) shot through the right knee: orders were then given to burn the farm: this was done, the Boer ammunition in the barn going off in the fire with a merry pop.

The Boers on seeing the smoke, began yelling like savages. Orders were then given to retire: this was carried out most skilfully—singly—through the wood, the horses going over two enormous jumps like birds. The patrol then, with the covering party left behind the wood, galloped back through the open, up hill, about a mile over very rocky ground: fortunately the horses made no mistakes. The Boer marksmanship was not good, their nerves being a little upset by Lieut. MAYALL's party on the left flank. Both patrols now quitted the ridge on the plain, Lieut.





MAYALL retiring on Bank, Lieut. RIMINGTON on Oberholzer. Unfortunately when Lieut. RIMINGTON had got about 800 yards from the ridge Pte. RADFORD, Sherwood Foresters, got a bad fall from his horse and broke his pelvic bone; he could neither walk nor ride, so a man got on each side of him and helped him along. The Boers now lined the ridge and fired far too accurately, especially at the horses and wounded man; so Private RADFORD was placed under cover and the horses were galloped back out of harm; a dismounted party then went back and whilst they kept up a fire on the Boers, Lieut. RIMINGTON and Pte. BULLOUS assisted RADFORD—a very long and tedious job, as the man was in considerable pain and the Boer fire was far too good. However they got him out of range and back to camp, the Boers of course not daring to come down into the open. About 110 Boers were seen. Our casualties were Acting Corporal CUNNINGHAM, Sherwood Foresters, killed, and Trooper NORTHEAST, Marshall's Horse, wounded, who were brought in next day. One man whose horse was shot, Trooper O'LEARY, Marshall's Horse, although he had been ordered back directly, insisted on searching for his rifle, got overlooked in the retirement, hid in the wood by the farm, and got away in the night back to camp. He saw about two hundred Boers dancing round the farm at night like a lot of savages. They treated Trooper NORTHEAST very well when they heard he was not one of "those colonials." He stated that it was Commandant BOSHOFF against whom we had fought and that all the Boers spoke English well.

On the return of the party under Lieut. MAYALL to Bank, Private ISAACS was thrown from his horse and died on the 6th January from cerebral hæmorrhage.

In connection with this reconnaissance, the following message was received from General HART by Capt. RIGBY: "Received your report of your action against DE VILLIERS' farm. I think you have done it very well and that Lieuts. MAYALL and RIMINGTON, and the troops under your command acted very well in execution of your plan. Please express my opinion to all."

On the 9th January, a patrol under Capt. RIGBY, composed of our M. I. and Marshall's Horse went out towards the Gatsrand, and on their commencing to retire the Boers opened fire. The patrol retired firing, and was pursued by about 15 mounted Boers who came on very boldly, one of them being hit by our fire. Our men retired on the "half-way hut" to replenish their ammunition, having expended every round. The

Boers however retreated before more ammunition could be obtained. There were no casualties on our side. On 15th January Pte. BATES, a sentry at the Ganger's Hut near Bank, was wounded by a Boer sniper.

A patrol consisting of about 20 men of Marshall's Horse and M. I. men from Headquarters, started from camp at 8 a.m. on the 2nd February under the command of Captain RIGBY, who had 2nd Lieut. RIMINGTON with him, and proceeded to Bufflesdoorn Pass. A smart capture of horses (5), and one mule was made *en route*. The animals, a very valuable lot, were at once sent back to camp. The Officer Commanding the post at Bufflesdoorn Pass expressed a desire that Bufflesdoorn village should be visited, as no one had been there for three months. Our M. I. ever ready for a skirmish, advanced with their usual caution over some very difficult country, *i.e.*, small stony hills with small trees, to a position about 300 yards outside the village.

Here they dismounted: about 20 Boers could be seen near Leeuwpoot about 6 miles off, while on the other side of the village were a lot of men with about 700 oxen and a large quantity of sheep. A Cape cart was then observed driving along the road towards the village, and our men at once opened fire on it but with no effect, as the man turned his horses and bolted. Some Boers were then observed in another portion of the village and fire was opened on them also. Bufflesdoorn village now resembled an ant heap rudely disturbed, men standing to arms all over the place. The patrol then returned to Oberholzer arriving in camp about 3.30. p.m. The Commandant Welverdiend reported in the evening that one Boer was seen by a native scout to fall wounded from his horse. The patrol confirmed the report that the Gatsrand was full of Boers.

On the 5th February, Lieut.-Col. H. C. WYLLY arrived from the 2nd Battalion at Malta, on appointment, and took over command.

C. J. L. G.





## PART III.

---

### WITTEBERGEN AND PRINSLOO'S SURRENDER.

On July 7th, 1900, Major-General BRUCE HAMILTON's Brigade marched into Reitz, and orders were issued for the ox-convoy to proceed on the following day to Heilbron under escort of the 1st Battalion Sherwood Foresters—600 strong—there to load up stores and return. The remaining 106 N. C. O.s and men of the Battalion were to remain with the Brigade under the command of Captain RADFORD; Lieut. POPHAM was attached for duty, in so far that this was not to interfere with his duties as commandeered of cattle for the use of the Brigade. The men detailed to remain behind were naturally chosen from those whose boots were in the worst condition and who were showing signs of fatigue on the march, as it was expected that they would have about 10 days' rest.

On the 8th the Battalion marched out with the convoy, and during the 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th the Detachment settled down in cantonments, having a small section of the outpost line to find permanently.

On the 13th the Brigade marched at short notice about 10 miles south.

On the 14th a 16-mile march took us to camp about 4 miles north of Bethlehem.

15th.—Halted.

16th.—We heard a good deal of firing from the S. and learnt that DE WET had broken out from the Wittebergen mountains before General HUNTER's cordon had been completed. This report proved afterwards to be correct, and thus commenced the first and most remarkable "DE WET hunt," which ended at Oliphant's Nek in the Transvaal and which the 1st Battalion had the good fortune (?) to take part in.

General BRUCE HAMILTON rode hurriedly into Bethlehem, leaving orders for the Brigade to follow as quickly as possible, each unit independently. Much delay was caused by the wagons having to be hauled up several very bad drifts, so that the Detachment only got settled down in camp on the N. side of Bethlehem just before dark. A section of the outpost line was again allotted to the Detachment as at Reitz.



17th and 18th.—The Brigade remained halted.

19th.—The convoy returned from Heilbron arriving after dark, and was found to be escorted—instead of by our Battalion—by Col. BAINBRIDGE'S M. I. Battalion, of which Lieut.-Col. (then Capt.) MARSHALL commanded the Malta Coy., with Capt. (then Lieut.) RITCHIE in command of the 2nd Battalion section.

20th.—The Sussex Regiment, with the Yeomanry and BAINBRIDGE'S M. I., was sent out in the direction of Retief's Nek.

21st.—General BRUCE HAMILTON marched south with the Camerons and Field Battery and succeeded in capturing Spitzkrantz.

22nd.—The Convoy, etc. under escort of the C. I. V. M. I. and ourselves, followed the General to Spitzkrantz, but could not quite get into camp as the wagons stuck at a steep bit of hill about a mile out and had to be outspanned where they were. We here came in for a very rare occurrence in these parts—a snowstorm—and awoke in the morning almost buried in snow. Two of our mules died from the cold during the night.

23rd.—The M. I. reconnoitred to the S. supported by two guns, escorted by half the Detachment under Lieut. POPHAM, and did not return to camp until dark. The Infantry remained in camp during the day. Spitzkrantz is one of those huge kopjes, rising out of the veldt, which are so common in South Africa. On the 21st the Boers held the summit and their position seemed impregnable, but a few enterprising Cameron men climbed up and, appearing on the top, so astonished the Boers that they fled.

24th.—We heard heavy firing all the morning, which turned out to be the action at Retief's Nek which was captured by the Sussex Regiment. The Brigade marched in the afternoon, the Detachment forming the advance guard. The General's intention was to camp at a spot about 8 miles distant, but for some reason he suddenly decided to reach it by a circuitous route, and we marched until midnight, feeling our way after dark, with long and frequent halts, and finally halting at two cross roads until daylight, as the guide could not find the watering place where we were to have camped.

25th.—We reached the spot about 8 miles from Spitzkrantz, which we were to have reached the previous day, and were joined by the Highland Brigade under General Sir H. MACDONALD.

26th.—At 6.30 a.m. BRUCE HAMILTON'S and the Highland Brigade moved out of camp and attacked Naáupoort Nek. The Detachment





held the high ground on the right and protected this flank, and the Nek was occupied with but little resistance on the part of the Boers—the Black Watch, Seaforths, and Argylls remaining to hold it. Our Brigade and the 1st H. L. I. camped a few miles to the N. E. at “Little Spitzkrantz,” some 5 miles S. of Spitzkrantz.

27th.—We only shifted camp about 4 miles to the east.

28th.—We moved out of camp early and the M. I. quickly became engaged with the Boers whom we had driven from Spitzkrantz and whose object was to delay our march on Golden Gate, now the only outlet south of the Wittebergen range still left for the force under PRINSLOO. The Boers occupied successive positions and were driven back about 12 miles. Half the Detachment acted as escort to the cow-guns, and half as right flank guard.

29th.—The Detachment moved out as advance guard and occupied a position about 3 miles from camp, while the M. I. on the left flank captured the plateau “Bessie,” the Boer guns shelling them with remarkable accuracy but little effect. The Camerons then attacked on the right and drove the Boers from their position, and we advanced in the centre, supported by the Sussex Regiment, which had just rejoined from their Retief Nek show. The Boers retired scattering to right and left. The M. I. picqueted Mount Bessie and were to be relieved by us early next morning.

30th.—We made a very early start and in  $3\frac{1}{2}$  hours reached the top of Mount Bessie and relieved the M. I.—our men having to make a second journey up with their blankets, ammunition, rations, etc. Our picquets were sniped freely all the afternoon.

31st.—We saw the Brigade down below moving out of the camp about 9 a.m., but we did not get orders to move until 11, on account of the clouds obscuring the signallers’ view. Meanwhile we provided ourselves with fresh meat by killing several sheep.

Lieut. POPHAM took a section lightly equipped to protect our exposed flank, while the remainder clambered down with their encumbrances, and at last we got started with our one wagon very heavily loaded, and followed the Brigade as fast as this would let us, but we did not quite get up, as the wagon broke down just before dark about three miles short of camp, and we had to bivouac in our tracks.

August 1st.—A fresh team of mules was sent out to us from camp to bring us in, and on arrival we heard that BRUCE HAMILTON had captured about 1,300 Boers at Golden Gate, and that PRINSLOO with a large

force had surrendered to General HUNTER.

2nd Lieut. POPHAM, as acting Provost Marshal, was charged with the destruction of the captured arms and ammunition. The pick of the Boers, with all their guns and best horses, had escaped with OLIVIER through the Golden Gate on the 31st July, so we were really just too late. We started for Winburg there to entrain the captured Boers for Capetown. These were allowed to ride either on their horses or on wagons, and were guarded by a half Battalion of the Sussex.

3rd.—We returned to Bethlehem *via* "Little Spitzkrantz" and "Spitzkrantz," meeting Rundle's Division marching on Harrismith on the 4th.

6th.—Halted at Bethlehem.

7th-12th.—Marched through Senekal to Winburg, where we found the officers of the 4th Battalion about to entrain for Pretoria, after their recent release from captivity.

13th-15th.—Remained at Winburg until all the Boers had been entrained.

16th-17th.—Marched for Kroonstadt, and on the 17th about 40 men of the Detachment were entrained at Virginia Siding on account of the bad state of their boots.

18th.—On the 18th we marched through Ventersburg Road, where poor ATTFIELD of the 2nd Battalion and his M. I. Coy. were stationed, and on the 19th we camped close to where the 1st Battalion was encamped on the 12th and 14th May last, and about 4 miles south of Kroonstadt.

20th.—We marched through Kroonstadt, and camped on the North-East side and immediately set to work to refit. Lieut. WEBB, with WRIGHT of the Volunteer Coy., joined us. Here we all expected a well earned rest, but on the evening of the 21st BRUCE HAMILTON left by train with the Camerons, Field Battery, and mounted troops, his destination being somewhere in the Doornberg where OLIVIER was already giving trouble, and the Bedfords (who had joined us at Bethlehem) and we were ordered to follow with the transport early next morning.

22nd.—We marched as far as Geneva Siding (South of Kroonstadt), where we found the General entraining, and we were ordered to load everything from the wagons on to the train and then entrain ourselves. The empty wagons followed by road under the charge of Lieut. POPHAM, and we were trained down to Ventersburg Road Station, the wagons coming into camp long after dark.

23rd-24th.—We did not move.





25th.—The Camerons and 4 Guns were trained down to Smaldeel and half the Sussex to Winburg, and the Bedfords, the other half of the Sussex, 2 Guns, and ourselves marched out to Ventersburg some ten miles to the east, when next day we reconnoitred to the South-East in conjunction with 2 Coys. Royal Irish Rifles and a Battery R.F.A.—the whole under Col. WHITE, R.A.

27th.—We returned to Ventersburg Road Station and heard that General BRUCE HAMILTON had, by quite a fluke, captured OLIVIER near Winburg.

28th August-3rd September.—We remained at Ventersburg Road Station under command of Major DE MOULIN of the Sussex Regiment. On the night of the 1st the Boers held up and burnt a goods train about 5 miles up the line, and a party of the Detachment, under Lieut. WEBB, went up as a covering party to the break-down gang on the 2nd, returning in the evening with the engine and one uninjured truck, the rest having been destroyed by the enemy.

4th.—On the 3rd we entrained for Bloemfontein, spending the night at Smaldeel, and on the 4th we detrained and went under canvas at the rest camp, Bloemfontein. That night BRUCE HAMILTON's force marched out towards the Waterworks, and thus we severed our connection with it, the Detachment being directed to remain behind in order to join Headquarters at an early date.

5th-10th.—We remained at the rest camp a week. On the 8th Lieut. POPHAM left for Krugersdorp to rejoin the Battalion as acting Adjutant.

11th.—On the 11th we suddenly got orders to entrain at once and were sent to Eensgevanden 14 miles N. of Brandfort. We passed the night on outpost duty at Brandfort the authorities there having a scare. We saw our 2nd M. I. Coy. here.

12th.—Detrained at Eensgevanden, which post we found to be under the command of Capt. ASHFORD, 3rd E. Lanc. Regiment, who had lately been attached to our dépôt at Derby for duty.

13th-25th.—Here we remained living under canvas, and, in conjunction with half a Coy. of 3rd E. Lanes., defending the post—quite an unimportant one, but in the vicinity of the Doornberg where a large force of Boers was supposed to be.

25th.—Entrained for Krugersdorp and passed the night in the train at Kroonstadt.

27th.—Halted for the night at Elandsfontein.

28th.—Arrived at Krugersdorp and rejoined the Battalion.

F. J. R.



## PART IV.

### WESTERN TRANSVAAL.

OBERHOLZER, *4th March, 1901.*

If you look at a large scale map and at the portion of it which shows the short line of rail running S.W. from Johannesburg, you will see the name Krugersdorp at the beginning and Potchefstroom near the end of this line. It is practically between these two places that the Battalion is now stationed—guarding the line--and here it has been since the latter part of August or early days of September. When the Battalion first came up here the Boers were fairly active, tampering with the line and trying to hold up trains, but latterly they have been more peacefully inclined.

The stations of Reitfontein Bridge, Bank, Oberholzer, and Welverdiend are each about eight miles apart, the first and last named being held in part, and the other two altogether, by men of the Battalion, our Headquarters being at Oberholzer.

Every two or four miles are smaller posts, not exceeding 25 men, guarding bridges, important culverts, etc. Every post is protected by earthworks and barbed-wire fences. About 32 miles beyond Welverdiend, to the south, is the old capital of the Transvaal—Potchefstroom--which has a large garrison including a couple of hundred of our men: off by road to the N. W., and some 25 miles distant from Potchefstroom, is Ventersdorp—BABINGTON's Headquarters—where we have another detachment of about 100 men. The officers are distributed as follows:-- at Reitfontein is ANLEY: at Bank are PHELPS, RADFORD, WEBB, MAYALL, ARMSTRONG, and HODGSON: at Oberholzer are the C. O., Adjutant and Quarter-master, RIGBY, TAYLOR, and RIMINGTON: at Welverdiend are SADLER, MURRAY and DE PLEDGE: at Potchefstroom is POPHAM: while MORLEY and NAPIER are at Ventersdorp. At least three officers are away on various unseconded jobs, viz., RITCHIE, RHODES, and GILSON: FREND and MANBY are sick: while SHEPARD, HEXT and O'FARRELL have not yet joined the Battalion, to which, we believe, they have all three been posted on appointment.

We lead peaceful lives here, especially at Headquarters, where we have a splendid field of fire all round the post: Bank is not so well





situated for defence and has besides to keep watch over an important railway bridge about 1,600 yards N. of the station. On the 7th February, we received warning by wire that one SMUTS intended to attack either Bank or Oberholzer within the week; sure enough about 1.30 on the morning of the 13th we heard tolerably heavy firing from the direction of Bank for about half an hour: then silence, and then about 3 or 3.30 a loud explosion, and we all guessed the bridge had gone. In the morning, when day broke, we learnt that shots had been fired into Bank, evidently to engage the attention of the Garrison, and that meanwhile a determined attack had been made upon the bridge by a hundred picked men. There was a double sentry on the bridge with the relief posted close at hand: one of the sentries saw a figure approaching the bridge, but hesitated to fire thinking it might be one of our own native scouts, the morning being very dark: then as he half rose up to fire, he was himself—this was Pte. WHITE—shot dead through the head, while Cpl. TYERS,\* who was just then about to relieve sentries, was mortally wounded through the stomach; another man, Pte. WILDGOOSE, being shot in the thigh and made prisoner. The Boers now came boldly on meaning to destroy the pumping station and mine the bridge, but by this time the picquet furnishing the bridge guard had turned out and doubled down to the bridge, where they at once became engaged at the closest quarters. Here they were joined by Lee-Sergt. YOUNG—whom the 2nd Battalion sent out last September—and by Pte. HANDLEY, sent by Captain PHELPS to gather information: but these were all driven back by numbers to their picquet post where they stuck it out till morning, when the Boers wrecked the bridge and withdrew.

Pte. WILDGOOSE came in next morning and reported having seen at least 20 wounded Boers taken off on horses: three, however, were left behind and a farmer came in and asked Captain PHELPS to send for 3 more who were lying very severely wounded at his house: one of these died before he could be fetched in, both the others died within a day or two, while two more dead bodies were found on the field next day, so that—bar the bridge—the Boers came off second best. The O. C. Krugersdorp district wrote as follows in regard to the affair:—"I consider the picquet behaved most gallantly and shall be glad for my appreciation of their conduct to be recorded." Captain PHELPS has recommended Lee-Sergt. YOUNG for the V. C.

All the Boers came from the Gatsrand, a long low range of hills which flanks one side of our line of rail, and which lies in the triangle formed by it and by part of the main line to Pretoria. The valley through

---

\* Previously wounded at Wonderheufel.

which our line runs is about four or five miles broad, is watered by a small river (the original of RIDER HAGGARD'S underground river, for this too disappears into a wonderful cave which we all visited one day), and beyond the low range of hills north of the line, but at a considerable distance, rises the Magaliesberg where General CLEMENTS was so heavily engaged at the end of last year.

---

NAAWPOORT, 22nd April, 1901.

My diary tells me that I despatched my last letter to you on the 4th March, since when many changes have taken place. On the 16th, Lient. MANBY arrived from sick leave in England, and about the same time a report came that the Battalion was to be concentrated—or at least a great part of it—at Potchefstroom—a most delightful little place. However, this was soon cancelled, and on the 23rd our Headquarters were moved to Bank, the G. O. C. being very anxious that the Battalion should be got together. We had not, however, been more than two days at Bank, when we were ordered to send 50 men to Reitfontein Bridge and 50 more to Middlelei—two places up the line in the Krugersdorp direction.

On the night of the 2nd, a small party of Boers came down to the villages near Bank and carried off seven miserable horses which were there, and then, flushed by this success, they lay in wait for our Cossack Post going out at daybreak and fired into it from 50 yards without hitting a man or a horse. Our mounted men under Lient. ANLEY were out in a very short time and galloping after the marauders; they exchanged shots and Pte. FLINT, late of "C" Company 2nd Battalion, had his horse killed.

Rumours had lately been very busy that the Battalion was to go on trek again, and Monday's up train—that of the 4th April—brought through our Ventersdorp and Potchefstroom detachments, from whom we learnt that the Battalion was to concentrate at Krugersdorp. We shortly after received telegraphic orders to the same effect at Bank, ordering the remainder of the Battalion to leave next day on relief by the Border Regiment. We got away on the 5th about 1.30 p.m., and reached Krugersdorp three hours later, being met on the platform by a gorgeous apparition in a staff cap, which turned out to be Capt. RITCHIE, disguised as "Ox Transport."

We found about 130 men under Capt. MORLEY had been hurried out that morning to Naawpoort to take the place of the Border Regiment in Col. DIXON'S—formerly Brigadier General CUNNINGHAM'S—Column. No mounted men were given to this party and they were naturally





sniped *en route*, luckily losing only a mule. The next day Captains PHELPS and RADFORD and 150 men left for the same place with Colonel SHEKLETON's mounted men, Headquarters being retained in Krugersdorp—pending the arrival of the Welverdiend detachment—to accompany a large convoy going out to Colonel DIXON. The rest of us eventually left with this—360 men of the Battalion, 2 guns of the 28th Field Battery, about 100 Scottish Horse, 70 of the 5th New Zealand Contingent, and 30 of Marshall's Horse. We started by the same road as that by which Doctor JAMESON tried to come in six years ago, and camped that night at Brandvlei, about 11 miles out, as the C. O. had decided to do the 35 miles in 3 marches—taking into consideration the fact that the Battalion had done no marching for six months. The next day we marched to Kaalfontein, outspanned for four hours to let the cattle graze, and then moved on some six miles to Hartebeestfontein, a very pleasant, clean camp. Here we captured 7 Boer prisoners—one a desperate ruffian of some 13 gory summers. We heard they were lurking in a native kraal about two miles off, undecided as to whether to surrender or not, so we determined to make their minds up for them. A party of New Zealanders were sent out, rounded them up very cleverly, and brought them all in without a shot being fired.

The next day—the 10th—we marched the remaining 9 miles into Naawpoort, being met some little way from camp by Colonel DIXON, whom some of the 2nd Battalion will remember in India three or four years ago, when he was commanding the K. O. S. B.s.

That day the Brigadier informed us that he was going away to co-operate with General BABINGTON, leaving us here with 400 of ourselves, two guns and 100 Scottish Horse to “hold the fort.” He did not, however, leave until the evening of the 11th, when he started with all his mounted troops, under circumstances of some secrecy, to round up about 40 Boers who were believed to be at a farm several miles off. The Worcester Regiment, with the baggage of the Column, left early the following morning. We found we had taken on rather a large job in the defence of Naawpoort: the position is on a lofty ridge about a mile and a half long from end to end, and unfortunately it is necessary to hold the whole ridge, as the firewood has to be cut below one end and the drinking water to be fetched from below the other. Our Company outposts are consequently rather widely separated, but each post is very strong now and all assist one another in the general scheme of defence. Headquarters and two Companies are in or near the central fort on the highest part of the ridge, from which one gets a lovely and very extended view—to the south over rolling downs right away to Krugersdorp,



with which we are in signalling communication, and to the north over low wooded ridges to the Magaliesberg, some eight miles off as the crow flies. Nooitgedacht, where the Fighting Fifth came to grief, is in view, and we are in communication by helio with Oliphant's Nek and Rustenburg, through to Pretoria. To the west and east the hills are lower, but the ravines are everywhere deep and thickly wooded and the country looks very difficult.

According to what the men call "the Intelligent Officer," we are surrounded to within forty miles or so by some 2,000 Boers, in large and small commandos and in independent predatory gangs, but one rarely sees them unless one goes some distance from camp, when the soil seems to produce them—like the public buildings of Eden City—"spontaneous." But I think they all prefer to be let alone, unless they have the chance of swooping, in overpowering numbers, upon some fat but thinly-guarded convoy. We can rarely go far from camp without being fired upon and are only waiting for the arrival of our sixty Mounted Infantry under Lieut. ASLEY, whom we had temporarily to leave behind at Bank, to go out and harry the country side. This was one of the dirtiest camps I have ever seen—smellier even than Ali Musjid—for it has been a camp since BABINGTON first sat down here two months ago, and some of the Colonial Corps, by whom it has chiefly been occupied, have cloudy ideas of sanitation. Another peculiarity of these corps is to leave their ammunition about: we have picked up very nearly five thousand rounds of L. M. ammunition in the posts and bivouacs on this hill; some in bandoliers left idly on a wall, some in packets among the stones, some in grain bags, but most lying in the dust of the deserted camping grounds. One can hardly be surprised that the Boer is still said to have no scarcity of small arm ammunition!

We have not so far been attacked in camp or molested by the solitary sniper. We have captured a Boer spy—a Kaffir. He was found near our camp after dark and proceeded to make the man who found him a prisoner: unfortunately for himself he was so drunk that there was no difficulty in turning the tables and making *him* a prisoner.

I was privileged to be present at the Interview which ensued between him—very drunk—and the Intelligence Officer—very sleepy and in bed. I believe—I have no actual knowledge of the matter—that it is difficult to walk when one is intoxicated, and I imagine this must be no easier when your hands are tied behind your back and your errant footsteps are being guided (?) by two soldiers—each about four sizes too large for you. The spy was allowed to sit down at the foot of the bed and at once composed himself to slumber across the Intelligent One's





legs. He was roused with some difficulty and charged with being a spy, at which accusation he shook his head with so much violence that his hat fell off into the Intelligent Lap. When asked why he was in our camp, he was ready with an easy and sufficient explanation: he said "he had merely come to see his Aunt"!

He turns out to be one of six Boer spies who were captured once before, but he escaped. He goes into Krugersdorp Jail.

We sent in a number of wagons to re-fill in Krugersdorp a few days ago and these return to-day with, we hope, a large consignment of stores for the mess and canteen, and with several officers. General DIXON returns here on the 25th from the west and we do not know what is to happen then. We are filled with a not, I trust, unholy pride at seeing yesterday in the cable news a strong rumour that Major-General SMITH-DORRIEN is to be the next A. G. in India: we are all sure that this would be his heart's desire and are rejoiced at the reward he receives for his good services in this war.

The convoy will be in very late and returns to Krugersdorp very early to-morrow to re-fill, so I must close.

---

NAAWPOORT, *3rd June, 1901.*

My last to you was written on the 23rd April, I think, which I admit seems a long time to have kept you without any news of this Battalion. A couple of days after I wrote General DIXON came in with his Column, after an absence of something less than a fortnight. The General decided to take us out on his next trek leaving the Worcesters behind to garrison Naawpoort, but as this Corps is not much over 400 strong, one Company of ours, under Captain PHELPS, was left here with them. Lieuts. FRENCH and POPHAM went sick about this time and were sent into Krugersdorp on the 28th. That night Major BROWNE, D. A. A. G. for Intelligence, had planned one of the surprises of which he is very fond, but regarding which he has so far not had particularly good luck, and took out 40 men of ours with some Yeomanry, accompanied by Captains RIGBY and PHELPS and Lieuts. ARMSTRONG and MAYALL. Their object was to surprise a Boer picquet which every morning at daybreak occupies a strong kopje about 8 miles from Naawpoort, commanding the road by which we proposed moving. The enterprise very nearly succeeded: our party reached the kopje first shortly before daybreak, and was in position some ten minutes before the advance scouts of a Boer picquet, 30 or 40 in number, made their appearance. The scouts rode close up to the kopje and then, wheeling round, galloped

away, so as to draw fire were anybody there who was unused to their funny little ways. No one, however, fired a shot, and the unsuspecting scouts returned and rode up to the back of the kopje and into the arms of a Yeoman who, most unfortunately, had just before been sent to the rear with a message to the remainder of the Yeomanry hidden some distance behind. The Boers dropped the Yeoman who, however, winged one of the enemy: a hot fire was now opened by our men, and the Boers all bolted, not, however, before 3 were seen to be severely wounded.

Our Column left Naawpoort at 6 a.m. on the 29th and about 9 we relieved Captain PHELPS' men who then returned to camp. Our right mounted flankers were more or less sniped at all the way to Vlakfontein, about 17 miles, but only one horse was killed though one Yeoman was captured. Vlakfontein is on the Jameson Road and our camp was just beyond one of the so-called hotels or stores—now empty—put up by CECIL RHODES in anticipation of the raid. Next day, 30th, we marched 11 miles to Kleinfontein and found rather a pretty camp near the source of the Elands River: we had our mess in a deserted farm-house and the men had some capital bathing in the pools. On this march too there was a certain amount of opposition on our right, where our flankers came into contact with some of the independent local fire-eaters who inhabit the valley south of the Magaliesberg.

When a Column is composed of so large a mounted force as ours, viz., about 1,200, the Infantry march in considerable comfort, for all advance, rear, and flank guard duties are taken by the mounted troops, the Infantry usually marching with the wagons and taking about half the picquets on arrival in camp. This night we had almost the first of the heavy frosts which herald the disappearance of horse sickness. On May the 1st we marched to and camped at the foot of Tafelkop—10 miles—a high flat-topped hill, whence we were in heliographic communication with Naawpoort, Lichtenburg and Ventersdorp. Here we remained nearly a week, moving our camp once a short distance during the time, and waiting for news of Lord METHUEN and General BABINGTON with whom we were supposed to be in co-operation.

At 1 p.m. on the 7th we received orders to march at 3.30., ourselves, 2 guns and 50 newly-caught Yeomanry marching with the empty wagons to fill up at Ventersdorp, distance 24 miles, while the General, with the rest of the mounted troops and guns, marched by a circuitous route on Leuwfontein, where we were to join him on the 11th with 5 days' supplies. That night we only got 6 miles or so away from Tafelkop there being no water anywhere else on the road: reached camp after dark and picqueted ourselves as well as we could.





We adopted then the plan which we have generally since followed, when halted with a small convoy escorted by none too many Infantry and few Cavalry: a half Company on picquet on each side of the camp and from 1,000-1,500 yards distant, the remaining Companies on three sides of camp, with the mounted men camped in rear. We were luckily not bothered that night and marched at 5 next morning: we outspanned at 9 for breakfast and to let the cattle graze, eventually arriving at Ventersdorp, unopposed, about 1.45—not bad for 17 miles over a very rough and particularly “Kutcha” road.

We spent a very pleasant day at Ventersdorp, which is a pretty little town surrounded by hills and with a beautiful clear stream flowing through it. Our Band played here in the evening and was greatly appreciated. The road next day was not well known, and the tame Boer, the local butcher, who had been engaged to guide us, did not turn up. However, we got off at 5 on a very cold and windy morning, and marched till 9.30 when we outspanned near the only piece of water *en route*: it was not an ideal halting place with Boers about, as there was a large wood in our front, but we had to do the best we could with it. Our signallers here picked up General DIXON's Column, and he told us to look out for Boers on the next day's march and that he would send out to help us if necessary. While we were digesting this message we looked out some Boers for ourselves, for a party of eight rode slowly and unsuspectingly across our front in the open about 2,000 yards off. We sent on our mounted men, but when we reached the spot the earth seemed to have swallowed them up. However, as we came into our camping ground (some farms called Wildfontein on the map, but known as “Schtompy's” to the local gentry) our mounted men almost rode into a party of some 20 Boers who were emerging from the farms—where, no doubt, they had proposed sleeping—and who were mounting in hot haste. There was much bad shooting on both sides, and the Boers got off with one man hit and the loss of several of their led horses. Our camp that night was rather smelly, being evidently the scene of many an old Boer laager and the ground being cumbered with the usual *knicknacks*—as an old 2nd Battalion comrade of mine would have called them. We found Mrs. SCHTOMPY had kept a regular supply-dépôt for the Boers for months past, so we brought the old lady along with us and burnt her barns and store-houses: the men feasted on roast pig that night and when I arose the next morning at 4.30—an hour when those who know me best love me least—I overheard one reveller offering another “cold pork”! We had another bitter frost that night, but got off at 6 and joined General DIXON at Leuwfontein about 11.



There can be little doubt, I think, but that our innocent Yeomanry were this morning "bluffed" by a Boer patrol. Only about half an hour after we had left camp, a small mounted party suddenly appeared on a ridge about 1,500 yards from the Column and beneath which the Yeomanry were solemnly riding. Shortly after, the O. C. Yeomanry came and reported to the O. C. Column that he was in touch with General DIXON's patrols: as we subsequently learnt that General DIXON had no people at all out in our direction that day, it seems clear that the Boers, finding themselves unexpectedly so close to our force, had successfully passed themselves off as Englishmen!

We marched next day--the 12th--at 7 in two Columns, the mounted men and most of the guns under Lieut.-Colonel SHEKLETON, and the convoy and Infantry under Lieut.-Colonel WYLLY, and after going for 11 miles reached a very rocky camping ground at a place called Kaffirkraal. We had over 30 prisoners with us, for I find I have forgotten to mention that during our absence at Ventersdorp General BABINGTON had driven a fairly big party of Boers into General DIXON's arms, with the result that nearly 30 of the enemy and several wagons, horses and mules, rifles, and ammunition were captured. As this effect was entirely unrehearsed it was the more pleasing. The march on the 13th was in the same order but the mounted people left a couple of hours before we did.

When marching in this way and also when detached on convoy duty, we have generally used what is left of our mounted men, about 12 in number, to cover our rear, and this morning they were followed for several miles by 3 or 4 of the local gentry, and once the shooting was a little close; we crossed the Schoonspruit and camped at Klipfontein, and there learnt that we were to march for the rail again at Welverdiend--close to our old haunts--as the Boers had all broken away to the S.W. whither Lord METHUEN was following them.

Next day an ambush was prepared for the men who had been following up our rear guard of late, and a mounted party with the Pom-Pom was hidden in a farm. Sure enough the usual "followers" appeared, three in front followed at a distance by nine others. One of the three was the son of the owner of the farm and he came up telling his companions, in English, of what he would do to the next soldiers he caught.

He died next morning from a bad wound in the stomach, the two men with him were captured, and the others fled headlong pursued by shots from the Pom-Pom.

22  
21  
20  
19  
18  
17  
16  
15  
14  
13  
12  
11  
10  
9  
8  
7  
6  
5  
4  
3  
2  
1



This day, the 15th May, we marched to Witpoortje, where we struck the Ventersdorp-Potchefstroom road and where we got into heliographic communication once more with the railway and civilization. This march was about 11 miles. On the 16th we marched much about the same distance to a place called Reitvlei, crossing the Mooi River just before reaching camp. Here Captain RADFORD was admitted to hospital suffering from fever, and on this march a couple of Yeomen were wounded. On the 17th, we reached Welverdiend where we halted for a whole day: here we received no less than 19 bags of mails. We had a sing-song that night; and next day, to our great regret, we bid good-bye to the 5th New Zealand Contingent—as fine looking and as useful a body of men as any in the field. Our Band played them to the station where they entrained for Capetown, their period of engagement having long ago expired and they having only remained on, at their special request, for this last trek in which they had hoped to have seen some fighting. We expected to have got a lot of ponies and small horses from the New Zealanders to mount some new Mounted Infantry, as the calls for men from our two M. I. Companies are becoming imperative, but at the last moment the New Zealand horses were ordered to be handed over to the new Yeomanry which had recently arrived up country.

We marched on the 19th to Oberholzer, receiving *en route* a warm welcome from our old friends the Van Asswegen family, every member of which seemed to have cleaned him or herself specially for the occasion, though whether this unusual ordeal had been submitted to by reason of our arrival or because it happened to be the Sabbath, I should not like to guess! We crossed the spruit at Oberholzer and camped about a mile the other side. Here we had the pleasure of seeing Captain ANLEY, and here Lieut. DE PLEDGE went into Bank so as to be ready to take our Mounted Infantry down country whenever they should be ordered away. (It was here notified for the first time that Pte. HAYES of Capt. ANLEY's party had been wounded at Orange Grove on 21st April.)

On the 20th we marched 11 miles to Doornfontein and on the 21st to Vlakplaats (10 miles). This being only 6 miles from Krugersdorp we halted for the 22nd, and sent into the town for supplies, etc.; from here too we got another mail. On the 23rd we marched 9 miles to Kaalfontein and next day 15 miles into Naawpoort. Here we found Lieuts. NAPIER and HARVEY and also about 500 of the K. O. S. B.s, which Regiment had relieved the Worcesters.

We were not allowed to remain long in Naawpoort, for on the 26th May we were off again. Captain PHELPS with 210 men of our Battalion,

100 K. O. S. B.s, and 100 mounted men, with the 4.7 gun, remained at Naawpoort, while General DIXON moved out with the following force, viz. :—

6 guns R. F. A.  
1 Pom-Pom.  
1 Howitzer.  
240 Scottish Horse.  
240 Yeomanry.  
400 K. O. S. B.s.  
400 Sherwood Foresters.

“H” Coy. of ours, with one Company K. O. S. B.s, went out over night to seize and hold the same kopje of which I have before spoken and which commands—8 miles from here—the western road. This kopje was seized without opposition. We left Naawpoort at 8 and had barely gone 6 miles before our right flankers became active, small parties of Boers holding a long ridge north of our line of march.

The Scottish Horse engaged these but were not able altogether to dislodge them. Meanwhile our advance guard guns and the Pom-Pom had come into action against some of the enemy holding the low rocky kopjes guarding the approaches to the Magalies River valley, and in moving to reconnoitre one of these some of the Yeomanry came to grief, with the result that the howitzer and “C” and “D” Companies of ours were ordered up. We were told at first that the Yeomanry had had seven men killed including an officer, and it appeared that instead of galloping full speed at the kopje in extended order, the Yeomanry had advanced up to it at a walk and all bunched together, with the result that six of them were dropped within 400 yards by the concealed Boers. It was lucky for us the Boers did not stay—they seldom do now for Infantry—for the advance to the kopje was over 3,000 yards of perfectly level ground without cover of any kind except the long grass. (We held the kopje that day and the next, having 1½ Coys. on picquet there while we remained in camp at Basfontein.) We fired on the retiring Boers at extreme Infantry range from the kopje and think we accounted for a few.

Next day, the 27th, we made an excursion into the valley towards Middlefontein (almost opposite Oliphant's Nek) where General CUNNINGHAM'S Force got rather severely handled some months back. The Boers we had seen on the previous day all seemed to have broken eastward and but few came to our notice or under fire on this occasion.





A number of barns and store-houses were burnt, in two of which concealed ammunition announced its presence by a merry "popping"; the men got plenty of fowls, ducks, and young pigs, and fared sumptuously, and we were all back in camp by 1.30.

The next day's march to Vlakkfontein was a short one, only about 6 or 7 miles; there was again some desultory sniping on the right, and on arrival in camp our mounted men and some guns went on to the W. and, at a distance, sighted a big Boer convoy of sixty wagons trekking from S. to N. The guns shelled the convoy ineffectually and then returned to camp, having one Yeoman wounded and 2 Scottish Horsemen missing. That night the Padre and an ambulance with a Doctor went out to look for the missing men but did not return for forty-eight hours. The reason was that they "fell among" Boers, who took them to the laager, where they were informed that they would be much safer than in the British camp!

On the 29th, the whole Force, bar two Coys. of ours and of the K. O. S. B.s, left camp at 8 o'clock. The General had heard that some Boer guns were buried in a valley about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  miles off to the west, and also that a quantity of ammunition was buried in another valley about the same distance to the north of the camp, and he meant to try and recover each in turn. When we moved out, the advance guard consisted of 2 guns, 230 Yeomanry, and "H" Company of ours, under Major CHANCE, R.A.,—Lieut.-Colonel SHEKLETON, who was to have commanded, being sick in camp. The main body and rear guard, under Lieut.-Colonel WYLLY (with whom was Brig.-General DIXON), consisted of two guns, the howitzer, "E" Coy. of ours, and 2 weak Coys. of the K. O. S. B.s, while a strong flank guard on the right, a good mile and a half distant, was composed of 2 guns, 2 weak Coys. K. O. S. B.s and the Scottish Horse. When we reached the ground overlooking the valley where the guns were supposed to be, "E" Coy. sent half a Coy. forward while the advance and flank guards guarded both flanks and opened fire on small parties of Boers seen within range. Meanwhile the high ground to the left rear of the A. G. was occupied by one of the K. O. S. B. Coys. from the main body. No guns were found, and the order was then and there given to retire in a N. E. direction to search for the ammunition. The K. O. S. B. Coys. with the main body were withdrawn by the G. O. C. and sent off first—probably half an hour at least before any retrograde movement by the other units of the force commenced. We had gone about 2 miles and had reached the hill overlooking the valley where the ammunition was said to be, when by a lucky chance the G. O. C. changed his mind—said "the place was too



far—it was getting late, and he would not go that day—troops could return to camp.” In turning about towards camp, “E” Coy. of ours now became the leading unit, then the two guns and howitzer, and then at a distance the two K. O. S. B. Companies, and then at a further distance the old right flank guard. The former A. G. should by now have reached camp, but it seems to have been followed up almost as soon as it began to retire and it eventually halted and came into action about 2,600 yards to the west of camp. At this time Major CHANCE does not seem to have anticipated any real attack, for the Yeomanry were still covering his rear and especially his unguarded left—*right* as he retired. Just now, however, a big veldt fire—lighted of course by the enemy—began to come down on the guns and Infantry with great rapidity. Behind the smoke were seen the figures of mounted men and of men leading their horses, and all seem to have, for some time, taken these to be our Yeomanry covering the retirement.

However, all at once any doubt was rudely dispelled: the bulk of the Yeomanry came back leaving the left wholly unguarded: the Boers followed fast through the smoke and opened a heavy fire on the guns and on “H” Coy. Both these units had just tumbled to the situation; the gunners were working their guns for all they were worth, and our men having advanced 100 yards were lying down extended, and had just opened fire. It must have been within the next few minutes that the bulk of the casualties occurred, and just then too that the first of the troops returning to camp began to arrive on the ridge. Meanwhile all our wagons, with their native drivers, had inspanned and were  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles off on the Naawpoort road!

“E” Company at once extended and advanced along the N. edge of the camp ridge, while the guns and howitzer following came into action on the left of the Infantry; but neither had gone far before we saw to our distress that the two guns with the rear guard were in the enemy’s hands—indeed there was soon no possible doubt of this fact for they were speedily wheeled round and turned indiscriminately on the camp, on us, and on the right flank guard now returning fast to camp. Combined with this determined and—for a time—successful attack on the guns, the Boers had also threatened the S. and S.W. sides of our camp—whose weakness they, no doubt, well knew. Everybody who could handle a rifle, from prisoners upwards, was turned out, and “C” Coy. of ours, which was on the W. picquet, advanced in the direction of the captured guns, while “D” went down to some farms to the S. W. and turned out a few Boers holding them.





Major BROWNE, the Intelligence Officer, was with "C" Company, and he organised the advance and final rush, led by Lieut. MANBY, which induced the enemy, with the help, no doubt, of the heavy shelling they were now experiencing, to fall back, and this was the signal for a general retirement all along their line, leaving the guns in our hands.

The casualties were confined to the detachment of the two guns (which lost all its horses and had only 7 men left unwounded), "H" and "E" Coys. of ours, and the Yeomanry, almost entirely. Our two Companies had that morning each gone out 100 strong; of "H" Coy. Cr.-Sgt. HERROD brought back only 28 men, while the Yeomanry had 58 casualties including 6 officers killed. The R. A. Subaltern with the guns was killed: four of ours—Captain SADLER, Lieuts. GILSON, ARMSTRONG and RIMINGTON—were wounded—all but ARMSTRONG in three or more places each, while we had 18 men killed, 61 wounded and 5 missing. The total casualties of the Force are 181—of whom 59 were killed or have died of wounds.

The wounded were not all brought in till after dark, and a few of the dangerous cases were very wisely left out on the field all night, having tents pitched over them and blankets provided. We rather thought the Boers might have come on again that night, but they had evidently had enough and it seems that their casualties were very nearly equal to ours, one of the few prisoners we took admitting to having seen 57 dead Dutchmen. The whole of the 30th, our respective vedettes watched each other from a distance of some 2,000 yards of neutral ground, about which the stretcher-bearers went to and fro. Many of the wounded had narrow escapes from the veldt fires, and Captain KELLER was very badly burnt at the close of the action in attempting to get a wounded Yeoman away from the path of one of these terrible grass fires. All the killed were buried that afternoon—the 30th—the gunners and our dead in one grave, and the Yeomen in another, the Padre having been happily released by the Boers at the close of the action.

We appear to have been attacked by 1,500 men under KEMP, who "commands the district," and there can be no doubt that DELAREY was joining him as fast as possible, sweeping up every available man he could find. Under these circumstances the G. O. C. decided on a night march back to Naawpoort. Had we stayed, we should no doubt have been attacked in force next day, and though we should certainly have beaten the enemy off, another butcher's bill like that of the 29th would have weakened our column terribly— isolated as it was in a difficult

country. We accordingly left our wounded and ambulances and doctors in camp, and slipped off quietly on the night of the 30th, made an admirable night march of 16 miles, and reached Naawpoort at 3 a.m. on the 31st quite unmolested.

---

CASUALTIES IN ACTION AT VLAKFONTEIN, 29TH MAY, 1901.

---

*Killed.*

No. 3328,	Private J. POYSER,	... ..	Letter "A" Coy.
.. 5609,	Lee.-Cpl. A. HOOKE,	... ..	"D" ..
.. 6177,	Private J. WILSON,	... ..	" ..
.. 4216,	" G. STALEY,	... ..	" ..
.. 5258,	" T. DARLISON,	... ..	"A" ..
.. 2405,	Private J. WILLIAMSON,	... ..	"E" ..
.. 4428,	" H. BERESFORD,	... ..	"H" ..
.. 2645,	" J. DAY,	... ..	" ..
.. 5481,	" J. DUNCALF,	... ..	" ..
.. 5651,	" W. GOODWIN,	... ..	" ..
.. 5514,	" W. LEE,	... ..	" ..
.. 5478,	" E. SPOONER,	... ..	" ..
.. 4778,	" C. MADDISON,	... ..	" ..
.. 5632,	" C. ROE,	... ..	" ..
.. 4780,	" E. SPINK,	... ..	" ..
.. 4115,	" A. FELL,	... ..	"F" ..
.. 5607,	" J. DAWN,	... ..	"A" ..
.. 4792,	" C. WALTERS,	... ..	"D" ..

---

*Died of Wounds.*

No. 5151,	Private C. CRESSWELL,	... ..	Letter "A" Coy.
.. 5283,	" T. TURNBULL,	... ..	"E" ..
.. 4875,	Drummer E. GOODMAN,	... ..	"H" ..
.. 5775,	Private H. HENDERSON,	... ..	" ..
.. 4245,	" W. JESSOP,	... ..	" ..
.. 3877,	" H. RICE,	... ..	"D" ..

---

*Wounded.*

Captain R. P. SADLER.  
 Lieut. C. J. L. GILSON.  
 Lieut. G. D. I. ARMSTRONG.  
 2nd Lieut. M. B. RIMINGTON.





*Wounded.—Continued.*

No. 4985,	Corpl. T. WRIGHT,	... ..	Letter "A" Coy.		
.. 3963,	Lie.-Cpl. G. BOOTH,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 5784,	Private J. CAUNT,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 2712,	.. D. CHAMBERS,*	... ..	"	"	"
.. 4803,	.. W. CHEETHAM,*	... ..	"	"	"
.. 6016,	.. W. IREMONGER,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 4136,	.. J. PORTER,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 5782,	.. A. JOHNSON,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 2529,	.. A. LEES,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 4258,	.. W. SHAW,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 6034,	.. J. MOON,	... ..	"	"D"	"
.. 4650,	.. P. RANDALL,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 4506,	.. G. CRESSWELL,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 4231,	.. A. SPENCER,	... ..	"	"E"	"
.. 5747,	.. A. ALLEN,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 3458,	.. J. HOLMES,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 1794,	.. G. WYLIE,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 3475,	.. T. BELLAMY,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 5265,	.. J. SMITH,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 5569,	.. W. BACON,	... ..	"	"F"	"
.. 4773,	.. J. CAROLINE,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 6466,	.. T. ADAMSON,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 5422,	Sergt. C. CHAMBERS,	... ..	Letter "H" Coy.		
.. 4770,	Corpl. F. SARGENT,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 3278,	Private C. AGER,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 5491,	.. G. ATKINS,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 2489,	.. A. BEDNALL,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 6125,	.. G. BROOKS,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 2836,	.. H. CHARLES,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 3718,	.. B. CLARKE,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 3424,	.. J. COLLINS,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 3410,	.. J. COLLEY,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 6456,	.. A. ENSER,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 6357,	.. A. CLARKE,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 2999,	.. H. FLETCHER,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 5302,	.. C. GIRLING,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 3433,	.. C. GREEN,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 6481,	.. J. GREGORY,	... ..	"	"	"
.. 2812,	.. J. HICKEY,	... ..	"	"	"

\* Previously wounded at Diamond Hill.



*Wounded, -Continued.*

No.	5457,	Lie.-Cpl. J. MORLEY,	...	...	Letter "H" Coy.
„	3234,	Private C. PERCIVAL,	...	...	„ „ „
„	269,	„ J. REDFEARN,	...	...	„ „ „
„	6410,	„ J. SEPHTON,	...	...	„ „ „
„	5205,	„ H. SMITH,	...	...	„ „ „
„	3297,	„ T. SHANNON,	...	...	„ „ „
„	5216,	„ G. SPENDLOVE,	...	...	„ „ „
„	5824,	„ E. STEVENS,	...	...	„ „ „
„	4629,	Lie.-Cpl. F. WARD,	...	...	„ „ „
„	6518,	Private F. WARNOCK,	...	...	„ „ „
„	3863,	„ E. WATERHOUSE,	...	...	„ „ „
„	2598,	„ J. WISEMAN,	...	...	„ „ „
„	3363,	„ T. YEOMANS,	...	...	„ „ „
„	5487,	„ D. JACKSON,	...	...	„ „ „
„	4768,	„ C. LOWE,	...	...	„ „ „
„	5035,	„ A. BLOOD,	...	...	„ "D" „

*Captured.*

No.	5674,	Private C. KINGSTON,	...	...	Letter "A" Coy.
„	2900,	„ H. WEBSTER,	...	...	„ "D" „
„	5966,	„ W. HUNT,	...	...	„ "H" „
„	4457,	„ W. KELLY,	...	...	„ „ „
„	4056,	„ J. WILLIAMSON,	...	...	„ „ „

*Injured by Veldt fire.*

Captain and Adjutant R. H. KELLER.

BOSCHFONTEIN, 27th August, 1901.

I find that I have not written since the 6th June when I despatched to you a long yarn giving an account of the action at Vlakfontein on the 29th May. We were glad of a good week's rest at Naawpoort, which we left again on the 7th June for the longest "trek" we have lately done. We marched this time right across the valley to Oliphant's Nek and met, *en route*, with a good deal of petty opposition in a very difficult piece of country. Two of the K. O. S. B.s, and 2 of the Scottish Horse were wounded. At one point of the road a rocky buttress of the Magaliesberg almost overhangs it, and





here one or two snipers had taken front seats and seemed to enjoy themselves very much indeed. We did not get into camp just inside the Nek—which is garrisoned by two or three Coys. of the Norfolks with 2 guns—until 4 p.m. and the rear guard not until after dark. Near this camp there was a large grove of most beautiful oranges upon which the whole Battalion feasted; this garden belongs to an Englishman—one GEORGE REX—whose father was one of the very numerous offspring of GEORGE IV. of happy memory. We captured three prisoners on this march—2 of them riding bicycles and carrying despatches.

The next day was a very long one; we were to act in conjunction with several other Columns, and Col. FETHERSTONEHAUGH, who was in command of them all, had directed us to seize Boschhoek Nek by that evening if possible. Boschhoek Nek was nearly 23 miles north-west of Oliphant's Nek, so it was out of the question that our whole force with its large convoy could get there by the time named. However, our mounted people went on and secured the Nek by midnight—capturing also one of General KEMP's despatch riders, who arrived only a few minutes after our own men did.

The rest of us left at 8 a.m., reached Rustenburg about midday, halted a couple of hours for light refreshment, and then went on to a place rejoicing in the simple name of Boekenhoutfontein; it was a long march, about 18 miles on a heavy road and with several bad drifts, so we on rear guard did not get in until 7 p.m. We passed through a very pretty wooded country—quite different scenery to that on the south side of the Magaliesberg. We left again at 4.30 a.m. on the 9th and got to Boschhoek about eight; the K. O. S. B.s garrisoned the Nek while here, but that evening 300 of our Battalion went out, 100 remaining at the Nek for the night as a reserve to 200 men who went down, under Capt RIGBY, to watch a drift about 6 miles to the south-west, an equal number of K. O. S. B.s being sent to another drift.

We spent four days very pleasantly at Boschhoek, which we left again on the 13th, retracing our steps in the direction of Rustenburg and camping near a native town, belonging to a chief called MAGATO, close to which a wagon road leads over the hills from Rustenburg to Zeerust. On the 10th we marched to a place called Selonskraal—about 12 miles—evidently in former days a very important native stadt; many years ago the Boers had “gone for” the original Selon, who had held out gallantly against them until his water supply was captured, when he was forced to surrender, and is still believed to be in durance vile somewhere up north. We were busy at our new camp clearing the under-

growth, which was here very thick, and building walls. On the 16th the Intelligence Officer "located" a small commando in a kloof about 18 miles off, and we called for and obtained fifty volunteers to form half the party, the remainder being made up of K. O. S. B.s. Capt. RIGBY went in command of our men ; it was a very hazardous venture, and the party which left at 2 a.m. next day to help our people in was very glad to see them reach Ratsegai's Kraal unopposed and safe—tho' wearied out—and bringing 3 or 4 prisoners.

The 19th was one of our bad days ; the General took out 300 of us, 2 guns, the Pom-Pom, and 200 Scottish Horse ; we went out to remove a number of families in a valley about six miles off. Some of the Scottish Horse went a good deal further than they were intended to, and unfortunately took up a not particularly commanding position in a house on the edge of a thickly wooded stream. Not unnaturally, these mounted men were held up in their house and were unable to withdraw when the time came. We went away not knowing the straits they were in, their own comrades made an ineffectual attempt to relieve them, and it was not until we had got quite a long way on our way home that a halt was made by the G. O. C., and the question of rescue was really discussed. The Officer Commanding the Scottish Horse post got a man away, who came and reported that they were holding out but could not do so much longer. The O. C. Mounted Troops was consulted and it was decided to leave the men to their fate, and we went on home feeling rather beasts. (The post held out till the men had fired off all their rounds and then surrendered, losing seven rifles and horses and having one man wounded.)

On return to our camp at Selonskraal there seemed to be some dread of an attack and our picquet of one Company, on a rocky wooded ridge east of the camp, was doubled, while next day we were all kept very busy building walls and sangars on our side of the camp.

On the 24th Captain RIGBY took out three of our men before dawn to try and surprise a Boer picquet on a hill a few miles south, but no Boers were to be found on that occasion : on the 26th one VAN HEERDEN with 400 men was reported to be preparing to attack our camp at 2 a.m., but he seems to have thought better of it. On the 27th we marched back again to Magato's Nek and camped in a very pretty spot, having only one picquet— $\frac{1}{2}$  Coy. on a very high hill S. of the camp. Here we heard of the death of two more of our Vlakfontein wounded—Ptes. JESSOP and HENDERSON.





We remained quietly in this camp till the 1st July, several warriors going in to Rustenburg to make purchases. Captain BALDWIN, the C. S. O. of the Column, here went sick, much to the regret of all in our Battalion: for he had always been most pleasant and considerate to us.

On the night of the 30th Captain PHELPS took on 50 men of his Coy. to secure the Nek at Boschhoek, which was successfully done before the morning: we marched at 7 and arrived at the same place about 2 p.m. We left this on the 2nd July and marched to Brak-kloof—a very tiring and dusty journey of 14 miles—and just as camp was reached we came in touch with a small commando of some 60 men or so under one VAN TONDER (the same man who had got the better of us on the 19th), who was holding a ridge near camp till his rear guard could get away. We had two or three mounted men wounded and did no harm—so far as we could see—to VAN TONDER or his friends. We camped here on the Elands River and had rather an awkward camp to picquet. (As we crossed one spruit shortly before coming into camp, we passed a house on which in large red letters was this pertinent query—“when dos KRUGER finish his furlow?!”) We halted here one day to enable the other Columns under FETHERSTONEHAUGH, WILLIAMS and HICKIE, who were all co-operating with us, to close up. The nights were now getting very cold with hard frosts.

When we marched again on the 4th July we heard we should be opposed, but the march was quite uneventful, though the country was very difficult, and in one or two places the fires left by the Boers were quite warm. We heard Col. WILLIAMS' guns and Pom-Pom going pretty hard during the day. We camped at Lindley's Poort on the Elands River. We only marched about 8 miles next day through a thick bush-veldt and on arrival in camp heard of a Boer convoy making away to the N. W. Our mounted men went out in pursuit, but failed to capture any part of it. We halted on the 6th and the Scottish Horse went out again, fell among Boers, and had an officer and 2 men wounded, and lost 2 or 3 rifles. The march on the 7th to Rieckertsdam was a long one of 14 miles: we left at 6.30. (on rear guard) and did not get into camp till 11 hours later, being terribly delayed just before reaching camp by the worst drift we have yet encountered—over the Marico River. We had no opposition on the next day's march to a place called Zenderling's Post, where we halted for the 9th and amused ourselves by clearing out a few families and by exchanging some remarks in Hindustani with a Bombay Mahomedan, who had been for some years in South Africa and who told us, with an honest pride, that he had espoused a “Dutch lady.” As the other Columns were now occupying the road in front



of us, we were not able to march on the 10th until 11.30, and we, who were on rear guard, did not get over the 14 miles into Zeerust until 8 p.m., passing *en route* a large Force under Lord METHUEN, who had been operating to the N. of us.

At Zeerust we found the other three Columns encamped and here we remained two clear days, marching again on the 13th. We were none of us much enamoured of Zeerust, which is the usual dusty, single-street town with a few stores and one or two dilapidated hotels, where whiskey(?) may be bought at about 12/6 a bottle. The camping ground round the town was overgrown with a most poisonous bulb called "tulp," from eating which we lost 22 gun horses and had 11 more seriously ill. We left Zeerust very early on a cold morning, lost our way, and finished up within about 16 miles of Mafeking—which we would all have liked to visit. We now had some long uninteresting marches through flat country off which all the grass had been burnt: on the 16th we passed through Lichtenburg; on the 17th Capt RIGBY, Lieut. MANBY and 4 of our men had a baddish morning in company with the Intelligence Officer and a party of Yeomanry, (Pte HANDLEY of ours being slightly wounded and a Yeomanry Officer killed), and on the 18th reached Ventersdorp, many of the men practically bootless. Halted a day at Ventersdorp and reached the line again at Welverdiend on the 21st July, when we received about four weeks' mails.

We now moved along the line in the direction of Krugersdorp, outside the works of which we encamped at a pretty spot called Waterval.

Here we received a very large number of bales and cases containing every description of "comforts," which had been sent out for the Battalion from our kind friends in Derbyshire and Nottinghamshire. These could not possibly have arrived at a more opportune moment: nearly all the men were without socks—which were also at the moment unobtainable from Government—and under-garments of all kinds were greatly needed, so we were able to fit out all ranks with everything they wanted from the stores so generously worked and bought for us in the Old Country.

At Waterval we got back Dr. WORTH, our popular M. O., and Capt. GOODMAN of the Volunteer Coy. paid us a visit and bemoaned his men's fate in being still stuck at Potchefstroom and unable to join the Battalion. (I forgot to mention that Lieut. ARMSTRONG, who was wounded at Vlaktefontein, and 2nd Lieut. MILLS from the Bedford Militia, joined us at Welverdiend.) We left for Naawpoort on the 28th, all looking very clean and smart in our new clothes, and reached our mountain home on the 30th, finding quite a Battalion of officers there—Major WATTS,





Captains GREEN, RADFORD, MORLEY, and ANLEY, Lieuts. FRENCH, POPHAM, HARVEY, MOTT and BECKE. We had no rest this time, but left the following morning with the convoy for Rustenburg under our new General—Colonel KEKEWICH, C. B. —who had taken over the command of our Column at Waterval—and pushed through to Oliphant's Nek with rather more than the average sniping from the usual local gentry. From here the convoy went on under the O. C. Sherwood Foresters to Rustenburg, where we camped and whence we returned next day picking up the rest of the Column *en route*. We brought back several of the prisoners we had taken and the families we had removed on our last trek. We got into Naawpoort about 5 p.m. on the 3rd August, having had a rather tiring day picqueting the hills on the west side of the road, but not having a shot fired at us. We here received information that No. 1104 Pte. CLARKE had been wounded at Naawpoort on 1st July, whilst with the water picquet.

On the 5th, we went back again to Oliphant's Nek—the same old gang on the top of the Magaliesberg making themselves rather more than usually offensive—and on the 6th we moved E. in two Columns; the left one moved with all the transport under Col. KEKEWICH, while the right one, under the O. C. 1st S. F., marched very light, with no wagons, and with our own 4 Coys., 2 Squadrons, a gun and a Pom-Pom. We marched close under the hills, and were accompanied for the first five miles by a party from the garrison of Oliphant's Nek, who came out to remove some families. This was not done without some loss and excitement, owing to the fact that the covering party of Yeomanry thoughtlessly placed their horses on the *enemy's* side of the houses, where 4 or 5 were at once bowled over by some Boers, who, sitting coyly among the kloofs, were watching the evictions with great displeasure. The evicting party found some difficulty in getting away, and we had to move out some of our Infantry and also shell the cliffs rather heavily before they were able to withdraw. We then moved on eastwards and later on got into some rather evil-looking country—a wooded basin surrounded by low, rocky, tree-covered hills. As we got to the fringe of the wood and within 1,200 yards of the ridge in front, over which our road wended, the scouts on a hill to the left first reported that the ridge appeared to be weakly held, and then, later, that 200 or 300 mounted Boers were making for the right of the ridge from the slopes of the Magaliesberg. Under these circumstances there did not appear to be much time to be lost; Major WATTS, with "H" Coy. under Captain GREEN, rushed the ridge in front accompanied by the advance scouts of the Scottish Horse; two more of our Com-

panies advanced on the right of the road, the whole covered by the fire of our two guns—one of which was chiefly directed on the right of the ridge to keep off the mounted men mentioned above. “H” Coy. gained the ridge in a marvellously short time, the 70 Boers who had been there—only a few of whom had been firing—clearing off to the S. We got one prisoner on the top and heard from him the pleasing intelligence that we had wounded five of his friends by our shell fire. None of our men were hit, but one horse was killed and another was wounded. We joined the Main Column in camp at Kromrivier at 5 p.m.

The next day a wagon road over the hills at a place called Breedts Nek was seized at dawn without opposition, and four Companies of the K. O. S. B.s with a gun were left there to hold it.

On the 8th we marched to a place called Eland’s Drift, on reaching which our mounted men in front came upon a number of Boers, who appeared to have been driven out of a pass in the hills by Col. ALLENBY’s men who were operating on the south of the Magaliesberg. Both we and the Boers seemed equally taken by surprise at this meeting, but our men got the drop on them first, killing 2 Boers, wounding two more, and taking one unwounded prisoner. On our side one trooper of the Scottish Horse was killed and one officer was very slightly wounded. Marched next day to Boschfontein—about 9 miles—and on the 15th we doubled back and had, in conjunction with Colonel ALLENBY, a most successful day. Major WATTS took “A” and “E” Companies of ours on to the top of the Magaliesberg, reaching there by dawn, after a terrible climb, and thence moved west along the top searching the kloofs on the north side, the south side of this range being nearly everywhere precipitous. ALLENBY’s men climbed up some seven miles further on and advanced to meet ours, while the rest of each Column moved along the foot of the range on the north and south respectively.

The drive proved most successful and at the end of the day, when darkness put an end to the sport, we had bagged between us over 40 prisoners with rifles, horses, ammunition and nearly 200 head of cattle.

Among the prisoners was Mr. WOLMARANS, formerly chairman of the Transvaal Volksraad. The next day was spent in the usual evictions, and on the 12th we returned to Boschfontein; thence the Column marched through Commando Nek, the right flank being guarded by 2½ Coys. of ours, which extended from the top almost to the bottom of the Magaliesberg, searching the kloofs and dongas by which it is seamed, but finding no Boers. We got into a pleasant camp nearly a mile S. of Oliphant’s Nek about 3 p.m. after a very exhausting day, and were glad





to have a day's rest and find ourselves once again within reach of letters and the delicacies obtainable for officers and men from the Field Force Canteen.

---

NAAWPOORT, *11th September, 1901.*

My last letter brought my narrative down to the 14th August, when we were resting at a place called Grootplaats on the S. side of the Magaliesberg. We did not remain there very long, as General BARTON, who was the Senior Column Commander in the neighbourhood, got very anxious at the idea of there being nobody on the N. side of the range. Consequently on the 16th our 4 Coys. and a Squadron of the Scottish Horse marched through Commando Nek again and moved to a very pretty camp called Zandfontein—only about 4 miles away, but on the N. side. The rest of the Column joined us next day and we moved another 4 miles west to Bokfontein, where we halted a day, and then, on the 19th, crept on another three miles to Boschfontein, coming into a fairly heavy thunderstorm just as we got into camp. That night we marched at 1.30 a.m. to try and get through the hills 7 miles north of camp by daylight and surprise some Boers—200 or so of whom, under one BADENHORST, were supposed to be laagered on the Crocodile River about 15 miles away. Colonel ALLENBY'S Column—which was very much stronger in mounted men than ours—marched parallel with us, and the intention was that the mounted men of both forces should push on rapidly at daylight and block the Boers' retreat northward. The night was very cloudy and the moon was consequently quite obscured, so that we stumbled along very uncomfortably in almost total darkness, arriving at the pass through the hills just as day broke, and finding that the Boer picquet which usually occupied the pass was off duty that morning: we—that is the Infantry portion of the Column—had no opposition, and we reached camp near the Crocodile River at a place called Wolverkraal about 1. p.m.—all very tired and sleepy. The mounted men were unfortunately just too late to prevent the enemy slipping away, but we got 14 prisoners this day, which, with 3 captured in the native village while at Bokfontein, made our bag on this trek up to 17: we also got about 80 head of cattle. Early next morning—the 21st August—2 of our Companies and 1 of the K. O. S. B.s, went out with the Intelligence Officer to search the kloof on a hill, where we had heard that a small Boer laager was generally situated. The rest of us had only 7 miles to go, but we took the greater part of the day over it. There was a certain amount of sniping towards the close of the march, as we drew near to Zoutpansdrift where we were to camp, and nobody knew exactly where



ALLENBY's men were, while he seemed to be in equal uncertainty about us. Consequently when a dashing Staff Officer of our Column—picturesquely attired—among other things—in a dilapidated Smasher Hat and with his orderlies similarly disguised—galloped into a picquet of ALLENBY's, he was naturally fired at. He withdrew and told all his friends he had fallen among Boers, and we fought ALLENBY desperately for quite 20 minutes!

Luckily nobody was killed or even wounded, but the Scottish Horse, who were our own immediate antagonists, complimented our men afterwards on the painful closeness of their shooting, it being stated that no Scottish Horseman could raise his head without getting quite a merry hum of bullets round it! The next day we marched about 11 miles down the Crocodile River—ALLENBY keeping on the other bank—through very thick bush country, and camped at a spot where the Boers had evidently laagered quite lately with a number of cattle: the camp was not particularly savoury—the habits of the Boer and his oxen being much of a muchness. We only went another 6 miles north on the next day and then turned south again, circling to the W. on our return journey. About 28 “surrenders” came in, but our mounted people somehow missed “rounding up” a mob of about 200 Boers, who were practically hemmed in in the angle of the Hex and Sterkstroom Rivers. Another 36 miles, done in three marches, brought us back again to our camp at Boschfontein on the Pretoria-Rustenburg road, where we arrived on the 26th, and where we remained until the 30th. While we were here Capt. GREEN took a convoy to Col ALLENBY's Column, and *en route* the mounted men with him captured two Boers who, when seized, made the usual remark, viz., “that they were on their way to surrender.”

We left Boschfontein on the afternoon of the 30th and in the next 54 hours covered 46 miles - not perhaps a very startling performance for seasoned Infantry, but pretty good considering the enfeebled state of most of our oxen. Leaving Boschfontein at 5 p.m. on the 30th we reached Elands Drift at 8.15 p.m. that evening: marched 13 miles next day, and 14 on the morning of the 1st September to Magato's Nek, passing through Rustenburg, where we left a large amount of supplies. That evening we were ordered to march south to the Selons River, where we arrived at midnight. The Boers whom we had driven away from the N. side of the Pretoria-Rustenburg road, appeared to have slipped through the Magaliesberg by Boschhoek Nek and joined Generals KEMP and DELAREY, who, with 800 mounted men, were at large in the valleys to the west of Naawpoort. Columns under Colonels HAMILTON, FETHERSTONEHAUGH, WILLIAMS and HICKIE were closing in from the S.





and W.: we were to block the east, while Colonel ALLENBY was to come round by Boschhoek, and stop the northern exit. Any Boers who might succeed in breaking away N. were to be pursued by a column under Lord METHUEN, who always has a large mounted force. That night—1st and 2nd—we covered a front of some 10 miles with Cavalry and Infantry picquets from the Koster River to Selonskraal: it was a dreary vigil as no smoking or fires were allowed. We moved again at 8.45 a.m. nine miles to Doornlaagte, passing through Selonskraal where we spent 10 or 12 days last June. We had already begun to fear that the cordon of Columns round the Boers must be incomplete, for we heard ALLENBY's guns almost in our rear, whereas he should by now have been well round on our right as we marched on Roodeval, where DELAREY's laager was said to be established: on arrival in camp we learnt that the bulk of the enemy with DALAREY and STEINKAMP had got away to the N. W., while KEMP, with a small following, was said to be still somewhere in the "drive."

On the 3rd September we marched to Roodeval—only about 5 miles—and camped alongside Colonel HAMILTON's force.

Here we heard that KEMP and several other Commandants had, with the majority of their men, got away between our Columns at a point on the Magato's Nek-Rustenburg road about 35 miles W. of the latter place. KEMP was said to be making for the neighbourhood of Klerksdorp where he was to meet DELAREY, and both of them were then to meet Commandant-General LOUIS BOTHA on the 15th instant near Pretoria. As the 15th is the date when, by Lord KITCHENER's latest proclamation, all leaders who have not yet submitted, will when caught be exiled, we are wondering if this news points to a speedy end to the war.

On the 4th September 3 little Columns went out, each more or less in the same direction but taking different "beats," to try and round up any dismounted Boers who might be hidden in the bushy kloofs and dongas scattered all over this particular part of the country. The General accompanied the centre party composed entirely of mounted men; two Coys. of ours under Major WATTS formed the left; and 2 of the K. O. S. B.s the right party: all had a long day out, but our men had all the luck, getting 20 prisoners, the other 2 Columns getting only 4 between them. Our prisoners were mostly caught in thick bush, some of them up in trees, but the fixed bayonets of our men had a most persuasive effect and the Boers yielded with appeals of "please don't, oh, please don't!"

Next day the mounted men went far afield and returned in the evening with 28 prisoners: four more were brought in that morning, and Captain ANLEY'S company, which went out at 3 a.m. to some farms about five miles off, got 3 more, so that in three days the "bag" made by our Column totalled up to 59. The Column marched about 8 miles only on the 6th to a place called Koperfontein, and on the way we brought in some families, among whom was a Dutch maiden—one SUSANNAH MEYER, the betrothed of General KEMP—and another lady who is the sister of General DELAREY. On the 7th September we marched into the valley near Basfontein—where we had not been since just before the action at Vlakkfontein—passing on our way by Middlefontein, where Brigadier-General CUNNINGHAM'S Column so nearly came to grief some nine months ago. Here we found Mrs. SMUTZ—wife of the General of that name, whose happy hunting grounds are usually on or about the Gatsrand—and who had come out from Pretoria with a white flag to try and find her husband. We remained a day in this camp, while a portion of the force went towards the E. to try and rake in a few prisoners. We found a woman's laager—with a few sick men in it—only about three miles from our camp, and before we had returned to camp we had captured three, and the rest of the force seven prisoners.

On the 9th we marched a few miles further on, spent a very rough blustering day camped on a piece of newly burnt veldt, and eight more prisoners were captured. Next day, the 10th September we marched an easy 8 miles into Naawpoort, and were glad to get a few days' rest again before we leave about the 13th—whither we do not as yet know.

We all hope our next trek may be as successful as this one in which our Column has captured 144 prisoners and brought in nearly 600 women and children.

---

RUSTENBURG, 4th October, 1901.

We had just got back here from a trip up to and along the northern Rustenburg-Zeerust road, where we had been operating in conjunction with 2 other Columns: these had apparently been shorter of provisions than we, and they consequently turned back to re-fill sooner than we did. We came back too very leisurely, stopping here and there to destroy the crops which are now coming up very abundantly. We reached Moedwil on the 29th; it was not an ideal position being on the banks of the Selons River which were here very bushy, broken and precipitous, except on the left front of the camp: the river ran round the better part of two sides of the camp (N. and N.W.) and on its banks





were the picquets of the mounted troops. On the other two sides—for the most part guarded by our picquets—there was a good deal of low scrub. On the evening of the 29th we sent our empty wagons into Naawpoort *via* Rustenburg to refill, and with these went about 60 mounted men and 110 of ours as escort: and it was, I believe, intended to cross next day to the other side of the Magaliesburg and await the return of our convoy there.

A picquet of the Imperial Yeomanry on the river bank at the extreme N. W. of the camp sent out a patrol at about 4.30 a.m. on the 30th when the moon was waning and the dawn had not yet appeared: this patrol had only gone a few yards when it came upon a number of Boers advancing through the scrub from the front, and upon others who had evidently approached along the front of the picquets found by the mounted troops, and by way of the river bed. This patrol and the picquet to which it belonged were at once overpowered and nearly all shot down. The noise of course alarmed the camp and the men came tumbling out from under the flies of the tents, but the Boers had already advanced and were firing, and the fire became at once very heavy indeed, and several of our men were hit before they could leave their tents—and this too though our camp was the furthest from the particular point of attack. The Companies commanded by Capt. PHELPS and Lieut POPHAM were at once sent off through the camp towards the river, and Major WATTS—with whom was Captain ANLEY—took a party more to the right, or more easterly side, of the camp, in front of which firing was now heard, and which was not so strongly held by picquets. In the meantime parties of the enemy appeared to be making their way along the front of the camp: these were however easily kept in check by two small picquets of ours, under 2nd Lieut. BECKE, established in two houses some distance out: but musketry breaking out also on the south of the camp where three sections of “H” Coy. were on picquet, it was thought advisable to keep a small body of men on this side of the position, in view of the possibility of the first attempt being merely intended as a feint to cover a real attack from some other quarter. The overwhelming of the I. Y. picquet had enabled the Boers—who were here led by KEMP in person—to penetrate almost into the camp and within short range of the guns, which were with great difficulty kept in action: but this had also left a gap in our picquet line, of which the Boers were quick to avail themselves, and they established themselves on the flank and within a short distance of “H” Coy.’s right picquet among some rocks overlooking the drift.

This post consisted of twelve men under Sergt. CHAMBERS; the Boers called on him to surrender, but he told them to “go to hell” and called



to his men "stick to it, men, stick it." This became a sort of rallying cry among them, and as each was hit, the survivors passed on the word. Of these gallant thirteen, nine were killed or died of wounds, three were wounded, and only one man, Pte. PICARD, was untouched. (The Boer prisoners, whom we secured after the action, acknowledged the services of this picquet in checking their advance, and declared that Sgt. CHAMBERS must have had at least a hundred men under his command.)

Our three guns had early come into action in the front of the centre of the camp: they were however quite out in the open, were terribly exposed, had no target—for all they had to aim at in the half light was the flash from the Boer rifles—and the guns themselves were soon under a hail of bullets—as indeed was every part of the camp. One gun was quickly silenced owing to so many of the detachment being hit, two of the three R. A. officers were wounded—one mortally—and at this juncture the Pom-Pom jammed: Sergt. NAYLOR, of the Pom-Pom, though badly wounded in the leg, kept on returning under a heavy fire to his gun to try and get it again into working order.

Meanwhile our Maxim under Cpl. SIMPSON had early come into action, and maintained its ground right well until six of the nine men composing the detachment were wounded. Here Pte. BEES of the Maxim detachment and Pte. BRIERLY of the officers' mess distinguished themselves: the former, hearing his wounded comrades asking for water, went down to the river, running the gauntlet of a number of Boers who were firing from within a hundred yards: Pte. BRIERLY went sixty yards under a hot fire to fetch water for the gun from the officers' mess, the kettle he carried being hit several times. Poor young 2nd Lieut. MILLS was killed alongside POPHAM in the advance towards the river: he showed the greatest keenness and disregard of danger. Even the men of the Coy., when advancing, cautioned him not to expose himself too much, and he replied "never mind me, men, there they are, shoot, shoot." He was himself shot through the head and died about midday, never regaining consciousness. (He was a particularly nice youngster, everybody liked him, and he would have made a fine soldier had he been spared. The men of his Company sent a deputation to Captain GREEN, asking that their sympathy and regret might be expressed to poor MILLS' people.)

Meanwhile KELLER had been shot through both thighs when trying to get up ammunition, and ANLEY had been wounded through the right leg when advancing on the N. E. side of the camp.

The Colonel Commanding the Column, Col. KEKEWICH, was twice wounded near the guns about half way through the action, and his A.





D. C.—Capt. WHITE of the Yeomanry—was also hit, as was Captain BALDWIN, D. A. A. G., when coming to bring the news to Lt.-Col. WYLLY, Sherwood Foresters, upon whom the command of the Column now devolved. By 6 a.m. the fire had appreciably lessened, and the Foresters had got to grips with the Boers in the river bed, where more than one of the enemy had been bayoneted by them.

By 6.15 the enemy were in full retreat, availing themselves equally skilfully of cover in their retreat as they had done in their advance. They left in our hands six dead, seven wounded and three unwounded prisoners, but they acknowledged losses mounting up to nearly 90. Of their dead one was Commandant BOSHOFF, the leader of their scouts: KEMP himself led the main attack and at one time actually penetrated almost into our camp. One of the prisoners, the Private Secretary of Commandant VAN HEERDEN, was tried and convicted of treachery under the white flag and was shot on the morning of the 2nd October. The total losses of the Battalion amounted to 63, of whom 21, including poor young MILLS, were killed or died of wounds. KELLER and ANLEY are doing very well; the former's wound was at first considered grave, but he is now going on all right. HODGSON had a lucky escape; a ricochet or spent bullet just penetrated into the flesh of his thigh, but he operated upon it himself on the ground, with the assistance of Lieut. MILWARD, with a rusty pen-knife! The casualties among the force totalled 191; of these 57 were killed or died of wounds, while 27 officers were hit and five died.

We suffered also very heavily in horses and mules, 307 horses and 185 mules being either killed or so seriously wounded that they had to be destroyed.

Curiously enough we had sent our empty convoy into Naawpoort on the previous evening to refill, and with it had gone as escort, "F" Coy, which had also missed the action at Vlakkfontein.

From Boer accounts it seems that the Boers, become desperate from shortness of food and ammunition supplies, had for some time been concentrating in view of attacking some one isolated Column. The previous week, when we were on the Zeerust road, the Boers had been holding FETHERSTONEHAUGH's two Columns with a weak screen, the while they lay in wait for us at a spot a little way north of the main road. They thought we were all making for Zeerust and their intention was to rush our camp one night, trusting to their screen in front of General FETHERSTONEHAUGH to prevent his coming north to our assistance. Unfortunately for the Dutchmen's well conceived scheme, we did not go

to Zeerust but marched back late one afternoon to our previous camp and then fairly rapidly back to the camp at Moedwil, where as I have described, they attacked us on Monday morning after having made a forced march of twenty-three miles on the previous Sunday. 1,200 men are said to have come on under DELAREY, who however does not appear to have taken any very leading part in the action, the conduct of which he left to General KEMP and Commandants VAN HEERDEN and STEINKAMP; General BEYERS, who had daily been expected from the north, is also believed to have been present, if not actually actively engaged. This force was to attack us on three sides, all engaged were very confident, and there is no doubt that had VAN HEERDEN and STEINKAMP attacked as vigorously as did Kemp, things might have gone badly with us. The enemy are now said to be very depressed at their failure, due, they believe, to the anger of the Lord at their having broken the Sabbath by moving that day to attack us.

Our retrograde movement after Vlaktefontein had had so bad an effect on the enemy, that we were all determined to remain for the present in our camp, in spite of many warnings that we should be attacked again before any other Column could come near us. However, we could hardly have moved had we wished to, so enormous had been our loss in transport animals. We helioed off as early as possible to Colonel WILLIAMS, whose column was some 35 miles distant, asking him to come up nearer to us: and, while the action was yet in progress, helios had been sent off to Rustenburg asking for ambulances and medical officers. Our own good medical officer—Civil Surgeon WORTH—had been nine months with the Battalion and had only left us the previous evening on the termination of his engagement under Government. He had reached Rustenburg—15 miles distant—early on the morning of the 30th and then learnt how greatly medical aid was needed by us, for the only two Doctors then with the Column had been wounded. Dr. WORTH at once asked leave of the S. O. Rustenburg to return: this was refused, whereupon WORTH turned his pony's head and galloped off on his return journey of 15 miles to our help. One pony dropped in the first seven miles, when he borrowed another one and rode it to a standstill just outside our camp. I am sure it will be long before this Battalion forgets the prompt devotion of Civil Surgeon WORTH.

Some ninety or more of our wounded were sent into Rustenburg that evening; Col. WILLIAMS was moving quickly up to our help but could not possibly reach us before midday on the 1st, so that night was rather an anxious one. However, WILLIAMS' Column reached us as early as it could have. FETHERSTONEHAUGH was also on the move, so all chance of





a second attack catching us when weakened was now removed. On the 2nd October the remaining wounded went into Rustenburg, and on the next day we were ordered to get ready to relieve the Norfolk Regiment in Rustenburg. We were all unfeignedly sorry to leave Col. KEKEWICH's command, for he has been a real good friend to the Battalion, but all ranks have had continuous marching for the last six months and will be glad to sit down for a bit.

---

CASUALTIES AT MOEDWIL.

30th September, 1901.

---

*Killed.*

No. 3464,	Lee.-Cpl. C. LIFFORD	...	...	...	Letter "A" Coy.
.. 6535,	Private T. McNALLY	...	...	..	" " "
.. 5707,	.. D. BOLLARD	...	...	..	" " "
.. 5347,	.. J. BLAKE	...	...	..	"C" "
.. 4311,	.. W. WORRAD	...	...	..	"F" "
.. 185,	.. F. WEBB	...	...	..	"H" "
.. 6518,	.. F. WARNOCK *	...	...	..	" " "
.. 6481,	.. J. GREGORY *	...	...	..	" " "
.. 3988,	.. W. GIBBONS	...	...	..	" " "
.. 2112,	.. H. BAGNALL	...	...	..	" " "

*Died of Wounds.*

2nd Lieut. G. E. MILLS.

No. 3212,	Private P. ARCHER	...	...	...	Letter "A" Coy.
.. 5386,	.. R. HILDITCH	...	...	..	" " "
.. 5807,	.. F. NORRIS	...	...	..	"C" "
.. 3052,	.. J. HARRISON	...	...	..	" " "
.. 409,	.. J. FERN	...	...	..	" " "
.. 4891,	.. G. NEWTON	...	...	..	"H" "
.. 6484,	.. A. BARTLETT	...	...	..	" " "
.. 2177,	.. G. HUMPHRIES	...	...	..	" " "
.. 2611,	.. W. WHEEWALL	...	...	..	" " "
.. 4725,	.. T. SILVERWOOD	...	...	..	"C" "

*Wounded.*

Captain and Adjutant R. H. KELLER.

Captain P. F. R. ANLEY.

2nd Lieut. M. K. HODGSON.

---

\* Previously wounded at Vlakfontein.



		<i>Wounded. Continued.</i>						Coy.
No.	5380,	Private	A. GALER,	...	...	...	...	"A"
"	6140,	"	T. HEAP,	...	...	...	...	"
"	6494,	"	A. HASLAM,	...	...	...	...	"
"	4991,	"	H. HOPKIN,	...	...	...	...	"
"	3707,	"	G. GREAVES,	...	...	...	...	"
"	6095,	"	R. BAINES,	...	...	...	...	"
"	1500,	"	J. GILDING,	...	...	...	...	"
"	2525,	"	J. NICHOLSON,	...	...	...	...	"
"	4202,	Sergt.	J. ROBERTS,	...	...	...	...	"C"
"	4853,	Private	C. GREASLEY,	...	...	...	...	"
"	2492,	"	T. JOHNSON,	...	...	...	...	"
"	5339,	"	E. JONES,	...	...	...	...	"
"	4420,	"	W. VICKERS,	...	...	...	...	"
"	5586,	"	O. EYRE,	...	...	...	...	"
"	1796,	"	G. SIMPSON,	...	...	...	...	"
"	5913,	"	H. MOSS,	...	...	...	...	"
"	1120,	"	G. STAPLEFORD,	...	...	...	...	"
"	4366,	"	W. GRACE,	...	...	...	...	"E"
"	5906,	"	W. SEYMOUR,	...	...	...	...	"D"
"	1774,	Sergt.	J. BEECROFT,	...	...	...	...	"E"
"	5580,	Corpl.	J. SIMPSON,	...	...	...	...	"D"
"	3656,	Private	A. BALDWIN,	...	...	...	...	"
"	6411,	"	B. CRESSWELL,	...	...	...	...	"
"	4141,	"	W. DAKIN,	...	...	...	...	"
"	6500,	"	T. GOLDBY,	...	...	...	...	"
"	1886,	Cr.-Sergt.	J. HERROD,	...	...	...	...	"H"
"	5422,	Sergt.	C. CHAMBERS,*	...	...	...	...	"
"	3251,	Lie.-Cpl.	R. DIXON,	...	...	...	...	"
"	3978,	Private	J. CAVENEY,	...	...	...	...	"
"	3405,	"	C. CHAMBERS,	...	...	...	...	"
"	5762,	"	A. STEVENS,	...	...	...	...	"
"	943,	Arm.-Sergt.	G. AVENELL,	...	...	...	...	"
"	5097,	Private	F. BANCROFT,	...	...	...	...	"A"
"	3972,	Sergt.	A. YOUNG,	...	...	...	...	"
"	5639,	Corpl.	T. WORTHINGTON,	...	...	...	...	"
"	5641,	Private	R. SHIPMAN,	...	...	...	...	"
"	4793,	"	T. CAROLINE,	...	...	...	...	"F"
"	5702,	"	J. BARNES,	...	...	...	...	"A"
"	5773,	"	C. BALL,	...	...	...	...	"

\* Previously wounded at Vlakfontein.





RUSTENBURG, 16th October, 1901.

I have not very much to tell you in this letter as I have already sent an account of the action of the 30th September, and my last letter of the 12th September brought the narrative of our doings up to that date. We left Naawpoort on the 14th September on what was to prove our last trek for some time: it was a horrible day, a violent wind was blowing, and the road to Oliphant's Nek was by now ankle deep in dust, so we felt it was really quite nice of the local sportsmen not to bother us. "A" and "C" Coys. under Major WATTS, picqueted the hills on the left of the road while the right was to a large extent safeguarded by a small force under Col. MACKENZIE, Suffolk Regiment, who was engaged in establishing block-houses across that part of the valley. We camped that evening inside the Nek in view of an early start in the morning. "E", "F" and  $\frac{1}{2}$  "H" Coys., under Lt.-Col. WYLLY, left camp at 5 a.m., passed out of the Nek again, and climbed by the steepest possible ascent to the top of the Magaliesberg, where the party arrived breathless at 8 a.m.

Meanwhile "A", "C" and the other  $\frac{1}{2}$  of "H" Coy., under Major WATTS, moved along the foot of the northern slopes parallel to the party on the top. Colonel KEKEWICH marched with the whole of the rest of the force to camp at Rhenosterfontein about seven miles on, where we all joined him towards evening. The Battalion had a most successful stalk, the party at the foot of the mountain capturing 12, and that on the top 24 prisoners, or 36 in all, the 24 being all taken by "F" Coy. under Capt. ANLEY.

A pleasing feature of this capture was the fact that it included Field Cornet KLOPPERS, the indefatigable sportsman who had so often sniped us at his ease from the top of the Berg. We got in addition 18 ponies, 29 rifles, 2,500 rounds S. A. A., 6 mules and 13 oxen. Colonel KEKEWICH was hugely delighted and warmly complimented all ranks on their success. (The Battalion's "bag" by this time was about 35 Burgheers captured.)

Next morning, the 6th, we started for a place called Waagfontein about 8 miles distant, but learnt *en route* that Commandant ELSE with a commando was said to be there: the Battalion was accordingly sent on to move direct on Waagfontein over the hills, while Col. KEKEWICH with the mounted men made a wide turning movement by the left: however ELSE had flown and we had a hard climb in heavy rain: the mounted men got three prisoners. We were leaving camp on the 17th intending to go up north again along the Crocodile River, when a helio came

in from the Chief telling us to stand fast, as we were wanted to help in the usual DELAREY-KEMP drive south of the Magaliesberg. We consequently marched back to Rhenosterfontein and spent three days there pleasantly enough, while our convoy went into Naawpoort to refill. We had a couple of days out along the slopes of the Magaliesberg while here, but we got nothing, while the K. O. S. B.s found some 7,000 rounds S. A. A. hidden in different kloofs.

On the 21st we marched to Rustenburg, passing on the way one or two new S. A. C. posts which are now being established between Pretoria and Rustenburg, and which with the blockhouses are doing so much to keep the country quiet; and on the evening of Sunday, the 22nd, we marched to Magato Nek where we arrived about 11 p.m. Here a wire from the Chief was received directing Col. KEKEWICH to send back at once one of his Infantry Battalions, which was required for block-housing somewhere on the Fredericstad line: luckily for us we were just then the stronger Battalion, so the Brigadier kept us and sent away the K. O. S. B.s. We marched on the 23rd to the Selons River hearing Col. HICKIE's guns and also a rumour that KEMP had fled before our Columns, moving first west and then in a northerly direction.

Our mounted men preceded us in our next day's march to Waterval, through a country and along a road which did not appear to have been previously traversed by any Column. Some Boers chased one of our patrols on our right flank, causing Captain RIGBY, who was in charge of the rear guard, to turn our Maxim gun on to them. Waterval was quite a little village and the crops all round were coming up very nicely. The few mounted men with our Column this day very nearly caught 2 or 3 Boers who were picnicking under a Cape cart, but they escaped over the hill.

We had a pleasant and shortish march next day—the 25th—to Brakkloof and found on arrival there that Col. DUFF's mounted men had taken 35 prisoners and close upon 500 head of cattle. On the 26th we marched to Lindley's Poort the drifts on the road being very bad after the rain—and heard there that KEMP and DELAREY were only about 8 miles off near a place called Vrede to the N. W. of our camp, where they had just been joined by VAN TONDER from the Dreierberg with 200 men. That night our mounted men made a night march towards Vrede by a circuitous route, but failed to locate any Boers at all. On the morning of the 27th we sent out every available man, mule, and ox to destroy and cut up the rich crops in the neighbourhood: and while thus occupied Lieut. POPHAM's half Company was sniped by some 16 Boers, but no harm was done.





We heard now that Col. FETHERSTONEHAUGH's two Columns had turned back, while there was no tidings at all of Lord METHUEN who had been expected to co-operate with us. We still had supplies, but our force has had some experience of being isolated in difficult country where the drifts are bad; we were encumbered too with some thirty ox wagons, so that afternoon we marched back to Brakkloof, all being in by 9.30 p.m. Our advance guard saw some 20 Boers about camp on arrival and secured one of these. We marched on the 28th to Waterval. "D" Coy., under Captain RIGBY, being detached to search, unsuccessfully, a kloof said to contain some of the enemy, while the mounted men made a very long detour and returned late at night with 3 prisoners and 40 oxen, but had one man wounded and three men captured, who were all subsequently released.

On the 29th we marched to Moedwil on the Selous River, and that evening "F" Coy., under Lieut. MURRAY, escorted our convoy into Naawpoort: they were accompanied by Captain RIGBY, who was down with a bad go of fever, and by Civil Surgeon WORTH who was proceeding to England at the end of his engagement under Government. The Band, whom we had brought out on this last trek, also went in with the convoy.

The events of the next few days you know already.

By the evening of the 6th October we were all either in Rustenburg or at Magato's or Oliphant's Necks, relieving the 700 men of the Norfolk Regiment with 416 of ours—which are all we can at present scrape together. The Battalion is now distributed as follows:—Captain GREEN, with "H" and  $\frac{1}{2}$  "A" Coy., a gun, and a few Yeomanry, is in command of Magato's Nek, which is seven miles N. from Rustenburg: eight miles away in the opposite direction is Oliphant's Nek, occupied by "E" Coy. under Captain RADFORD: here there are two guns and some Yeomanry, the whole being under Major YOUNG, R. A. "F" Company and a few details are still at Naawpoort, but will in a few days take over and occupy the eight block houses across the valley between Oliphant's Nek and Naawpoort, with which latter place we are all glad to think we shall now have no more dealings. The rest of the Battalion, with one gun and 50 Yeomanry, garrisons Rustenburg where we all think we shall be very comfortable. The men are nearly all in very strong, water-tight block-houses, the C. O. and his Staff Officer, Lieut POPHAM, live in a very nice house with a pretty garden in the town, while the mess is in a comfortable house.

On the 8th Colonel KEKEWICH—who had made a marvellous recovery—went out to resume command of his Column, and we all parted from him



with the greatest regret, for the Battalion can seldom have served under a more charming and more considerate or a more appreciative Commander. All the Subalterns of the Battalion turned out mounted and furnished an escort for him when he left the town, and we all are glad to think that he was as sorry to lose us as we were to say good bye to him.

On the 15th October a convoy came in and left again on the 17th with Captain ANLEY and several of our wounded, and since then the chief excitement has been the arrival of the Honours List and the offering of our respectful congratulations to those whom the "King delighted to honour." Our arrival here made 1024 miles we have trekked since we left Bank early last April.

---

RUSTENBURG, *15th February, 1902.*

I am afraid I have no news for you worthy of the name since we sat down to cultivate the arts of peace in Rustenburg, where our greatest excitement is the arrival of a belated convoy.

Columns have occasionally visited us; Colonel KEKEWICH was here once since we left his command, and Colonel COLENBRANDER twice cruised round our neighbourhood with his "Commando," but otherwise we have had few excitements. Since our arrival here, we have had to send some 70 men to occupy Breedt's Nek and the same number to Grobler's Pass. The Rustenburg District is now a very large one, covering some 10,000 square miles, and the Commandant's pay—the lordly sum of eighteen pence a day—seems absurdly inadequate for the administration of a realm the size of the Netherlands!

The horse sickness has been very bad: it began here early in November and will go on for another six weeks or so: we have already lost nearly 70 horses and some 25 mules from it in this district: other animals have their own diseases, and indeed this is a bad bit of country for all four legged beasts. We have all kept very fairly fit, though there has been a certain amount of mild malarial fever about.

There are no troops this side of the Magaliesberg now—W. of the Pretoria-Pietersburg Railway line—except those in Rustenburg, for when the horse sickness began to get very bad, the S. A. C. posts were withdrawn from our neighbourhood, so that direct communication by road with Pretoria has had to be abandoned until the first frost comes and drives away this horse sickness—the plague of South Africa. All mounted Boers have also deserted our neighbourhood: a few dismounted





ones occasionally wander about, but they are of a retiring nature and do not pay many calls.

Capt. MORLEY captured one near Breedts Nek not long ago, and on the following day had a man—Pte. KNOWLES—slightly wounded in trying to catch another.

We employ our spare time—of which we have a good deal—in making roads, building stables, and erecting blockhouses.

---

RUSTENBURG, *31st May, 1902.*

My last letter was despatched on the 16th February, since which date nothing very startling has occurred to disturb the even tenor of our lives.

On the day after I last wrote to you, Major GORDON-CUMMING arrived from England in company with Lieut. FRENCH. About this time we heard that SCHALK BURGER, who had been wandering about for some time with the remnant of his Government, was trying to move west in order to join and confer with DELAREY, and the Chief sent Col. COLENBRANDER's "commando" over to this side of the Magaliesburg ready for a dart upon the party. COLENBRANDER reached this on the 24th, and we arranged to send about 150 men out to support him, in the event of it being necessary to hold the many paths across the mountains north of Rustenburg; however, as it seemed that SCHALK BURGER was, after all, not coming our way, COLENBRANDER and his mounted men disappeared as quickly as they had come, and retired to the south side of the Magaliesburg and on to the high veldt away from "horse sickness."

They had not been gone more than two days when news came that a party, suspiciously like the Government party, had reached a place called Veekraal, about 45 miles N. E. of Rustenburg, and as the Chief wired that he thought these must be the "expected guests," it was resolved to try and block the passes without any outside assistance.

By great exertions and by weakening very appreciably our own defences, we managed to scrape together about 150 Infantry and some 45 mounted men; these last were our men, gunners, and I. Y., and some of their mounts were mules and some were horses commandeered at short notice. Major WATTS was placed in command: it was an awful night, rain had been falling all day—and as the men stole quietly from their posts to rendezvous on the north side of the town, rain was coming down in torrents. No wagons accompanied the party, for it was intended to forward rations, blankets, etc., next day. By 6.30 next morning

all passes up to the Elands River had been seized and occupied, and considering the awful state of the roads and the fact that Boschhoek—the furthest pass—was some twenty-four miles off, the march was a most creditable one. The next two days were very rainy, but we managed to get some tents out by the third day, so the men were more comfortable.

The Chief had wired for COLENBRANDER to return, but he was some way off, and the roads were so bad that he was not able to support our people till the fourth day, so would have been too late to catch SCHALK BURGER had that astute gentleman attempted to break through. On the 9th March our troops came in, after being out just over a week—it appearing that the Veekraal party was either not the Government at all, or that SCHALK BURGER had left it and gone east again. We were kept rather busy after this, as the Chief said he would like us to erect and occupy blockhouses up to and including Boschhoek, and it was consequently necessary to very greatly reduce our defences and carry out a number of alterations; however, shortly after, the Chief decided that for us to occupy so long a line “would unduly strain resources,” and directed that the project should for the present remain in abeyance.

A magnificent draft of 107 old soldiers from the 2nd Battalion reached us on the 8th April, together with 23 Volunteers under Lieut. BLACKWELL.

Since then we have had few excitements. On the 9th April our second Volunteer Company left us, and on the 11th some Boers came over the Magaliesberg from the west and looted a farm about two-and-a-half miles from the town during the night.

The farm belonged to a surrendered Boer, who very wisely always slept in the town. His countrymen took everything in the way of clothes from his family—even down to his wife’s stockings—and told them they had better go into Rustenburg and get a new rig-out from the British Government!

There had lately been a few dismounted Boers in the valley east of our “Hugo’s Post” Blockhouse Line, in the Naawpoort Valley, and the occupants of some new blockhouses we were erecting had been sniped, one sentry only just crawling into the doorway of his blockhouse before a bullet came in after him; so a drive was arranged in the valley. No Boers were seen or captured, but Major WATTS had the misfortune to be shot through the left foot by some of the Middlesex M. I., who were co-operating, and who took Major WATTS and his party for the enemy. Luckily the wound was not serious.





The Remount Department have sent us at last 24 cobs, so we have started some Battalion M. L., to join which there is great competition among the N. C. officers and men. Riding school is at 7 a.m. and when stirrups are crossed 'tis pleasant in the glowing morn *amongst the gleaming grass*, as I believe LINDSAY GORDON sings. Another draft of 51 men reached us on the 26th May, but we trust the war is over: the delegates have now been "in" a long time, and we hope they will not go "out" again with arms in their hands.

---

RUSTENBURG, 18th June, 1902.

I closed my last letter to you on the 31st May, and the following morning Peace was declared: we got the good news in church and the Padre gave it out at the close of the service, and for the rest of the day we went about with beaming countenances. In the afternoon the Band and Drums played up and down the main street, finishing up with "Rule Britannia" and the "National Anthem," followed by three cheers for the King, given with tremendous heartiness. On the next day we received a wire from the Q. M. G. telling us to send one officer, three N. C. O.'s and seven privates home for the Coronation, and "that no time was to be lost." This admonition was unnecessary--no time *was* lost--for the order only reached us about 10. a.m. and by 2 p.m. the party was driving off to Krugersdorp, 55 miles distant, which was reached in time to catch the 8 o'clock train next morning. This, too, in spite of the fact that the officer, Bt.-Major RIGBY, and one of the party were at Magato Nek seven miles off. The names of our "delegates" are as follows:--Bt.-Major RIGBY, Serjts. GILHAM, "A", and BISHOP "E" Coys, Lee-Sgt. LYNN "H", Ptes. GRAHAM "A", RADBOURNE, "C", HARTLEY, "D", PAWSON "E", CUNNINGHAM, "F", and GOULD and YEOMANS, "H." They were a fine looking lot and will do us credit.

On the 3rd June we received the King's gracious message of congratulation. Next day we found ourselves included in the "district west of Johannesburg," the G. O. C. of that district having specially petitioned that this favour might be accorded him "now that the war was over." This day too we spent in getting all the good horses from the I. Y. who were leaving for home, and in thrusting upon them our "ruins" for them to hand back into the Remount Department. However, next morning when the squadron was leaving, the O. C. begged to be permitted to hand us back one—a *sort of transparency*—whose tottering footsteps he was unable to guide beyond the wire fence!



About this time we pitched a small camp on the north side of the town near the stream, for any Burghers who might feel inclined to surrender, but though the tent doors remained invitingly open nobody availed themselves of our thoughtfulness for some days.

On this day—Sunday, the 8th June—we sent out a mounted party to visit all the natives for miles around, and to warn them that they were on no account to molest the unarmed Dutchmen now returning to their farms. Lieut. POPHAM represented the Government and Lieuts. MAYALL and HODGSON were in charge of his escort: they were away just four days and had a very pleasant trip, visiting the big native tribe of these parts in the Pilandsberg.

The tribe expressed their joy at the termination of the war, by discharging their firearms into the air all through the night, to the great disquiet of our signaller, who occupied a position of some insecurity on the top of a neighbouring hill. He received a message from Lieut. POPHAM, “not to be alarmed, as the firing was merely an expression of joy,” but replied gloomily that the evening had been anything but a joyful one for him, as he had been obliged to spend it lying flat on his stomach to avoid the bullets, which appeared to him to be aimed—with some success—at his signalling lamp!

On the afternoon of Sunday, the 8th, the first batch of the 1100 Boers, who had surrendered at Doornkom on the 6th June to General WALTER KITCHENER, began to come in. This was the Pretoria Commando under Commandant LIEBENBURG, and numbered 72 all told: we fed them, and they left again very early in the morning. These had already been disarmed before arriving here.

LIEBENBURG was decently dressed, and KEMP's Secretary who accompanied him was quite neatly got up, but others of the Staff seemed to take little or no pride in their appearance. The A. D. C. was garbed in a suiting such as is worn in the engine room of an ocean tramp: he wore one spur (the Adjutant, I think, wore its fellow), and on his head was a toy straw hat, such as the comic man *might* wear in a transpontine pantomime: this was kept on his head by means of a chin strap, obviously fashioned from an aged boot lace. The Adjutant was dressed for the part of a “Forty Niner:” wore a red handkerchief round his neck, the slouchiest of slouch hats on his head, and boots like waders. He was also bearded like the Pard—whoever he may be. This Commando was patchy as to its nether garments, but the Rustenburg Commando, which came in the following day, under Field Cornet BREETZ, was clothed entirely in patches of the most gorgeous hues.





causing it to present the appearance of a parterre of rather wilted flowers. They were all very good fellows, and I had the privilege of being introduced to nearly all of them. There were over 250 men and each one had a mistaken impression that I was personally cognizant of his wife's last address.

We had to disarm this party, and it was rather a long job: most of them were in a great hurry to get off to Pretoria, and few would wait for the rations we offered them, but rushed off on horses, on mules, on donkeys, in ox wagons and in donkey shays—these last ingeniously constructed out of the front wheels of an ox wagon and an old packing case.

The demeanour of all the surrendered Burghers has been most excellent; some few, of course, have been surly, and here and there one has been bumptious, but the large majority recognize—and cheerfully recognize—that they have fought a good fight and have been beaten, and all say they will now be as loyal to King EDWARD as they have hitherto been to their own Government. This good feeling is specially noticeable among the farmers, and less prominent among the dwellers in the towns. We hear a rumour that we may shortly move from Rustenburg, though not, I fancy, out of South Africa for some time, probably not till well into the trooping season. The men would, no doubt, be glad to get back on to the railway line again.

Our Volunteers under Lieut. BLACKWELL left us on the 12th June, and no doubt ere long our men of section "D" and of the Army Reserve will go back to their well earned rest.

H. C. W.

## LAST DAYS IN SOUTH AFRICA.

---

On the 24th June, the following interesting wire was received from Major WATTS at Bloemfontein :—" Mr. A. GODDARD, late Private 45th Regiment, who fought at Boomplaatz in 1848, sends greetings to his old Regiment." The following reply was sent :—" All ranks of your old Corps send hearty good wishes and many thanks for your message."

On the 24th June, No. 5062 Pte. H. GILL, E. Coy., committed suicide by shooting himself while temporarily insane, and the following evening we all heard the distressing news of the King's serious illness and that the Coronation was postponed.

On the 30th, our good friends of the 66th Field Battery left under Lieut. BOURCHIER (who for months had been one of ourselves), and with them went 200 Reservists—the pick of the Battalion—under Lieut. MURRAY, who had with him Lieut. LEAHY, 5th Bn. Royal Munster Fusiliers, who had been attached to us since early in the year. This party was joined, *en route* to Cape Town, by Brevet Lieut.-Colonel SHAW and eventually sailed, on the 30th July, for England on the "*Saxon*."

Early in July the Coys. commenced to vacate the various posts in and about Rustenburg, and the Battalion was soon concentrated on the slopes to the E. of the town; the posts at Magato and Oliphant's Nek, which we had held so long and in such strength, were each taken over by some half dozen constables of the S. A. C.!

On the 27th July, our second party of Reservists—118 strong—left under Lieut. POPHAM and his brother, a subaltern of the Munster Fusiliers, who had for some time been doing duty with the Battalion. These men were joined in Krugersdorp by 82 more men who had arrived there on their way to rejoin us and had been there detained. This party of 200 men was joined at Cape Town by Captain RADFORD and they eventually all left for home on the "*Syria*" on the 13th August.

On the 30th July, all the troops present in Rustenburg paraded to witness the presentation, by the Commandant, of the Victoria Cross to Corpl. BEES for gallantry at Moedwil.

On the 11th August, the third party of 100 Reservists left for Cape Town under Brevet Major CROFTON ATKINS (who had lately joined our Battalion pending absorption) and Lieut. SHEPARD: this party eventually left Cape Town for England on the 24th August.





On the 14th August, the last of our Reserve men, 69 in number, left Rustenburg under 2nd Lieut. BECKE and sailed from Cape Town on the 1st September in the "*Assaye*."

On the 23rd August, very sudden orders were received for the Battalion to hold itself in readiness to move into Krugersdorp at an early date, preparatory to embarkation for Hongkong. The Seaforth Highlanders, who were to relieve us in Rustenburg, arrived late on the afternoon of the 29th, and we left the following afternoon at 1.30, arriving at Krugersdorp—54 miles—about 5 p.m. on the 1st September. (This march completed over 2200 miles "trekked" by the Battalion in South Africa.) We had only one clear day here, so it was naturally a very busy one, there being all sorts of things to hand in, and upwards of 150 men—who were for home, etc.—to hand over. We left Krugersdorp by train at 9.30 a.m. on the 3rd, played to the station by the Band of our old comrades, the K. O. S. B.s, and reached Cape Town on the 7th—picking up several M. I. and other officers and men *en route*. Our rail journey was *most* uncomfortable; the men were in open trucks, the officers in unlighted carriages, and the stoppages for food, etc., were apparently governed entirely by the exigencies of the train service and in no degree whatever by the convenience of the troops. Our train was frequently delayed and shunted on to sidings to make way for returning Boer refugees and released Dutch prisoners, lolling at their ease in first and second class carriages! We were accommodated for the night in the old Boer prison at Green Point, paraded at 8.40 a.m. on the 8th, embarked on the "*Wakool*," Captain THOMAS, R. N. R., and sailed at 1 p.m. the same day for Hongkong.

The following officers, and 569 sergeants, rank and file, embarked:—Lieut.-Colonel WYLLY, C. B.; Capt. GREEN, D. S. O., MORLEY, RITCHIE and ANLEY; Lieut. HARRINGTON, DE PLEDGE, WYBERGH, FRENCH, MANBY, WEBB, ARMSTRONG, NAPIER, PAUL, RIMINGTON, HARVEY and COLLIN; Capt. and Adj. KELLER, D. S. O., and Lieut. and Qr.-Mr. TYLER.

---



## Appendix A.

### CASUALTIES IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN CAMPAIGN.

#### *Killed in Action.*

No.	5609.	Lee.-C'pl.	A. HOOK.
„	5258.	„ „	T. DARLISON.
„	3464.	„ „	C. LIFFORD.
„	5647.	Private	F. BELFITT.
„	3525.	„	G. NORMAN.
„	5791.	„	A. PIDCOCK.
„	5482.	„	C. MIDDLETON.
„	6118.	„	A. GOODMAN.
„	3094.	„	J. CUNNINGHAM.
„	5417.	„	G. WHITE.
„	3328.	„	J. POYSER.
„	4792.	„	C. WALTERS.
„	6177.	„	J. WILSON.
„	4216.	„	G. STALEY.
„	2405.	„	J. WILLIAMSON.
„	4115.	„	A. FELL.
„	5607.	„	J. DAWN.
„	4428.	„	H. BERESFORD.
„	2645.	„	J. DAY.
„	5481.	„	J. DUNCALF.
„	5651.	„	W. GOODWIN.
„	5514.	„	W. LEE.
„	4778.	„	C. MADDISON.
„	5632.	„	C. ROE.
„	4780.	„	E. SPINK.
„	5478.	„	E. SPOONER.
„	6448.	„	P. FOSTER.
„	5190.	„	P. ROSE.
„	3878.	„	A. HUNT.
„	6535.	„	T. McNALLY.
„	5707.	„	D. BOLLARD.
„	5347.	„	J. BLAKE.
„	4311.	„	W. WORRAD.
„	185.	„	F. WEBB.





*Killed in Action,—Continued.*

No.	6518,	Private	F. WARNOCK.
„	6481,	„	J. GREGORY.
„	3988.	„	W. GIBBONS.
„	2112.	„	H. BAGNALL.

*Died of Wounds.*

	2nd	Lieut.	G. E. MILLS.
No.	5210,	Sergt.	H. TYERS.
„	4875,	Drummer	E. GOODMAN.
„	2856,	Private	R. MOAKES.
„	5602,	„	T. SHERRIN.
„	4834,	„	R. HOOKE.
„	5432,	„	J. WESTWOOD.
„	5151,	„	C. CRESSWELL.
„	3877.	„	H. RICE.
„	5283.	„	T. TURNBULL.
„	5775.	„	H. HENDERSON.
„	4245,	„	W. JESSOP.
„	3212,	„	P. ARCHER.
„	5386,	„	R. HILDITCH.
„	5807.	„	F. NORRIS.
„	3052,	„	J. HARRISON.
„	409,	„	J. FERN.
„	4891,	„	G. NEWTON.
„	6484,	„	A. BARTLETT.
„	2177,	„	G. HUMPHRIES.
„	2611.	„	W. WHEEWALL.
„	4725,	„	T. SILVERWOOD.

*Drowned on patrol.*

No.	4367,	Corpl.	J. BRADSHAW.
„	5794,	Private	W. COSTALL.
„	5413,	„	W. HULL.
„	3357.	„	J. MURPHY.
„	5715,	„	G. TURNER.

*Died of Disease.*

	Captain	A. T. ENGLAND.
No.	4308,	Sergt. C. WILLMOTT.
„	3942.	E. SPENCER.
„	2894.	R. DODD.

*Died of Disease,—Continued.*

No.	3116,	Corpl.	S. ROBERTS.
..	5633.	..	R. CASTOR.
..	4447.	..	W. LOUCH.
..	7487.	Lie.-Cpl.	P. MARGERISON.
..	5756.	.. ..	J. SEYMOUR.
..	2978.	.. ..	W. ALDRED.
..	4376.	Drummer	A. RISTE.
..	1645.	..	S. VARLEY.
..	5645.	Private	E. SPENCER.
..	5681.	..	H. HOWARD.
..	2196.	..	P. BAKER.
..	5727.	..	G. RUSSELL.
..	3180.	..	T. BURNS.
..	5887.	..	W. CULLEN.
..	5628.	..	H. STOCKS.
..	7360.	..	A. TURNER.
..	5829.	..	S. NEWTON.
..	2077.	..	G. SPINK.
..	5740.	..	E. HALLETT.
..	7425.	..	A. TATTERSALL.
..	5219.	..	F. SMITH.
..	4804.	..	T. KEMP.
..	7378.	..	B. GOODLAD.
..	5444.	..	A. BRADBURY.
..	1240.	..	G. ASTILL.
..	4122.	..	W. UNDERWOOD.
..	175.	..	J. RILEY.
..	2721.	..	G. NEWCOMBE.
..	1628.	..	W. MATKIN.
..	5261.	..	A. BOSWELL.
..	5757.	..	E. TURNER.
..	6397.	..	T. GUY.
..	5652.	..	W. LONGMIRE.
..	6517.	..	T. HAUGHEY.
..	3131.	..	J. GOLDSMITH.
..	2903.	..	R. ISAACS.
..	763.	..	T. WHITEHEAD.
..	5335.	..	W. GREGORY.
..	6504.	..	C. WHITING.
..	2536.	..	J. BARNES.





*Died of Disease,—Continued.*

No. 5605,	Private	G. WEBSTER.
„ 7518.	„	G. RICHARDS.
„ 7523,	„	J. LEWIS.
„ 5251.	„	C. CONWAY.
„ 1308.	„	W. HICKLING.
„ 6088.	„	A. HUNT.
„ 6435.	„	J. CAMM.
„ 3863.	„	A. WATERHOUSE.
„ 5787.	„	W. MARTIN.

*Wounded.*

Captain	T. H. M. GREEN,	... ..	Severe.
Lieutenant	A. S. MURRAY,	... ..	Slight.
Captain	R. P. SADLER,	... ..	Severe.
Lieutenant	C. J. L. GILSON,	... ..	„
Lieutenant	G. D. I. ARMSTRONG,	... ..	„
2nd Lieutenant	M. B. RIMINGTON,	... ..	„
Captain	R. H. KELLER,	... ..	„
Captain	P. F. R. ANLEY,	... ..	„
2nd Lieutenant	M. K. HODGSON,	... ..	Slight.
No. 4276,	Lieut.-Cpl. N. NICHOLLS,	... ..	Severe.
„ 2548,	Private A. LENTON,	... ..	Slight.
„ 4378,	„ E. JOHNSON,	... ..	Severe.
„ 3211,	„ R. LINEKER,	... ..	Slight.
„ 2709,	„ H. NICHOLAS,	... ..	„
„ 6106,	„ F. BRADLEY,	... ..	„
„ 5772,	„ G. COPE,	... ..	„
„ 5323,	„ R. GRICE,	... ..	„
„ 5534,	„ A. HOLLIS,	... ..	„
„ 5880,	„ A. WILLIAMS,	... ..	„
„ 2889,	Sergt. E. ROWELL,	... ..	„
„ 3954,	„ F. SIMPSON,	... ..	„
„ 4566,	„ T. THORPE,	... ..	Severe.
„ 5531,	Corporal G. ROPER,	... ..	Slight.
„ 4376,	Drummer A. RISTE,	... ..	„
„ 1281,	Private P. MERRON,	... ..	„
„ 3289,	„ T. TOMLINSON,	... ..	„
„ 4652,	„ F. COOPER,	... ..	„
„ 5827,	„ A. FOSTER,	... ..	„



*Wounded,—Continued.*

No.	2929.	Private	W. GOODE.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	3218.	„	J. HOLROYD.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.
„	2319.	„	J. REYNOLDS.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	2712.	„	D. CHAMBERS.*	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	4803.	„	W. CHEETHAM.†	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5080.	„	S. RICHARDS.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5532.	„	R. BAXTER.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	2444.	„	M. GILL.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5674.	„	C. KINGSTON.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5751.	„	A. Everitt.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5210.	Corporal	H. TYERS.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	2986.	Private	W. HOWE.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.
„	6226.	„	C. BATES.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	6366.	„	G. WILDGUST.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	4604.	„	H. BRADBURY.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.
„	4985.	Corporal	T. WRIGHT.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	3963.	Lee.-Cpl.	G. BOOTH.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	5784.	Private	J. CAUNT.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	6016.	„	W. IRENMONGER.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.
„	4136.	„	J. PORTER.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	5782.	„	A. JOHNSON.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.
„	2529.	„	A. LEES.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	4258.	„	W. SHAW.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	6034.	„	J. MOON.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	4650.	„	P. RANDALL.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5035.	„	A. BLOOD.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	4506.	„	G. CRESSWELL.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	4231.	„	A. SPENCER.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5747.	„	A. ALLEN.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.
„	3458.	„	J. HOLMES.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	1794.	„	G. WYLIE.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	3475.	„	T. BELLAMY.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5265.	„	J. SMITH.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.
„	5569.	„	W. BACON.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	4773.	„	J. CAROLINE.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	6466.	„	T. ADAMSON.	...	...	...	...	...	„
„	5422.	Sergeant	C. CHAMBERS.*	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
„	4770.	Corporal	F. SARGENT.	...	...	...	...	...	Severe.

\* Twice wounded ; second time severely.

† Twice wounded ; second time dangerously.





*Wounded. — Continued.*

No.	3278.	Private C. AGER.	... ..	Slight.
..	5491.	.. G. ATKINS.	... ..	Severe.
..	2489.	.. A. BEDNALL.	... ..	Dangerous.
..	6125.	.. G. BROOKS.	... ..	Severe.
..	2836.	.. H. CHARLES.	... ..	..
..	3718.	.. B. CLARKE.	... ..	Slight.
..	3424.	.. J. COLLINS.	... ..	Severe.
..	3410.	Private J. COLLEY.	... ..	Severe.
..	6456.	.. A. ENSER.	... ..	Slight.
..	2999.	.. H. FLETCHER.	... ..	Severe.
..	5302.	.. C. GIRLING.	... ..	..
..	3433.	.. C. GREEN.	... ..	..
..	6481.	.. J. GREGORY.	... ..	Slight.
..	2812.	.. J. HICKEY.	... ..	Severe.
..	5457.	Lee-Cpl. J. MORLEY.	... ..	..
..	3234.	Private C. PERCIVAL.	... ..	..
..	269.	.. J. REDFEARN.	... ..	..
..	6410.	.. J. SEPHTON.	... ..	..
..	3297.	.. T. SHANNON.	... ..	..
..	5205.	.. H. SMITH.	... ..	..
..	5216.	.. G. SPENDLOVE.	... ..	..
..	5824.	.. E. STEVENS.	... ..	..
..	4629.	Lee-Cpl. F. WARD.	... ..	..
..	6518.	Private F. WARNOCK.	... ..	Slight.
..	3863.	.. E. WATERHOUSE.	... ..	Severe.
..	2598.	.. J. WISEMAN.	... ..	..
..	3363.	.. T. YEOMANS.	... ..	..
..	5487.	.. D. JACKSON.	... ..	..
..	4768.	.. C. LOWE.	... ..	Slight.
..	5298.	.. F. SHEERAN.	... ..	Dangerous.
..	5880.	.. A. WILLIAMS.	... ..	Slight.
..	4404.	.. G. SMALLEY.	... ..	..
..	2855.	Cr.-Sergt. A. EWIN.	... ..	Dangerous.
..	3662.	Private W. ASHMORE.	... ..	Severe.
..	4159.	Corporal A. PAYNE.	... ..	..
..	5813.	Private G. RAMSHAY.	... ..	..
..	4538.	.. J. RUSSELL.	... ..	..
..	1104.	.. F. CLARKE.	... ..	..
..	4838.	.. A. HAYES.	... ..	Slight.
..	6357.	.. A. CLARKE.	... ..	..

*Wounded, - Continued.*

No.	5380.	Private	A. GALER.	...	...	...	...	...	Slight.
..	6140.	..	T. HEAP.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	6494.	..	A. HASLAM.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	4991.	..	H. HOPKIN.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	3707.	..	G. GREAVES.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	6095.	..	R. BAINES.	...	...	...	...	Severe.	
..	1500.	..	J. GILDING.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	2525.	Private	J. NICHOLSON.	...	...	...	...	Slight.	
..	4202.	Sergeant	J. ROBERTS.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	4853.	Private	C. GREASLEY.	...	...	...	...	Severe.	
..	2492.	..	T. JOHNSON.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	5339.	..	E. JONES.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	4420.	..	W. VICKERS.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	5586.	..	O. EYRE.	...	...	...	...	Slight.	
..	1796.	..	G. SIMPSON.	...	...	...	...	Severe.	
..	5913.	..	H. MOSS.	...	...	...	...	Slight.	
..	1120.	..	G. STAPLEFORD.	...	...	...	...	Severe.	
..	4366.	..	W. GRACE.	...	...	...	...	Slight.	
..	5906.	..	W. SEYMOUR.	...	...	...	...	Severe.	
..	1774.	Sergeant	J. BEECROFT.	...	...	...	...	Slight.	
..	5580.	Corporal	J. SIMPSON.	...	...	...	...	Severe.	
..	3656.	Private	A. BALDWIN.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	6411.	..	R. CRESSWELL.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	4141.	..	W. DAKIN.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	6500.	..	T. GOLDBY.	...	...	...	...	Dangerous.	
..	1886.	Cr.-Sergt.	J. HERROD.	...	...	...	...	Severe.	
..	3251.	Lee.-Cpl.	R. DIXON.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	3978.	Private	J. CAVENEY.	...	...	...	...	Slight.	
..	3405.	..	C. CHAMBERS.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	5762.	..	A. STEVENS.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	943.	Arm.-Sgt.	C. AVENELL.	(A. O. C. attached).				Severe.	
..	5097.	Private	F. BANCROFT.	...	...	...	...	Slight.	
..	3972.	Sergeant	A. YOUNG.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	5639.	Corporal	T. WORTHINGTON.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	5641.	Private	R. SHIPMAN.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	4793.	..	T. CAROLINE.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	3560.	..	R. HANDLEY.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	5702.	..	J. BARNES.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	5773.	..	C. BALL.	...	...	...	...	..	
..	4215.	..	J. KNOWLES.	...	...	...	...	..	





## Appendix B.

---

### *Officers who embarked with the Battalion for South Africa.*

Lieut.-Colonel and Brevet Colonel H. L. SMITH-DORRIEN, D. S. O.,  
(Commanding).

Major E. A. G. GOSSET. (Second in Command).

Major F. C. GODLEY.

Major F. C. SHAW.

Captain A. T. ENGLAND.

Captain F. H. WELDON.

Captain P. G. RIGBY.

Captain P. LEVESON-GOWER.

Captain F. J. RADFORD.

Lieutenant R. P. SADLER.

Lieutenant R. H. KELLER.

Lieutenant L. St. H. MORLEY.

Lieutenant P. F. R. ANLEY.

Lieutenant B. F. BURNETT-HITCHCOCK.

Lieutenant A. S. MURRAY.

Lieutenant H. F. WATSON.

2nd Lieutenant H. F. P. PERCIVAL.

2nd Lieutenant G. F. DE PLEDGE.

2nd Lieutenant J. H. WYBERGH.

2nd Lieutenant W. R. FRENCH.

2nd Lieutenant H. V. RHODES.

2nd Lieutenant C. J. L. GILSON.

2nd Lieutenant W. H. WILKIN.

2nd Lieutenant G. L. H. MANBY.

2nd Lieutenant R. S. POPHAM.

2nd Lieutenant M. B. WEBB.

Staff Medical Officer, Major S. E. DUNCAN, R. A. M. C.

Adjutant, Lieutenant F. CASSWELL.

Quarter-Master, Lieut. F. TYLER.

### *Joined during the Campaign.*

Lieut.-Colonel H. C. WYLLY. .... On promotion to Command.

Major C. N. WATTS, ..... { On appointment to Second in  
Command.

Major and Bt. Col. G. G. CUN-  
NINGHAM, D.S.O., ..... { At Sterkstroom.

Major L. S. GORDON CUMMING, ... { On being posted from Adju-  
tant, Volunteers.



*Joined during the Campaign.—Continued.*

Captain T. H. M. GREEN, .....	{	On posting from 2nd Battalion.
Captain M. P. PHELPS, .....		With draft from England.
Captain J. F. RITCHIE, .....		On promotion.
Lieut. R. J. F. TAYLOR, .....	{	With 1st party section "D." Army Reserve.
2nd Lieut. P. C. SHEPARD, .....		On appointment.
.. G. D. I. ARMSTRONG, .....		..
.. G. MAYALL, .....		..
.. H. L. NAPIER, .....		..
.. H. S. BUTLER, .....		..
.. M. K. HODGSON, .....		..
.. M. B. RIMINGTON, .....		..
.. H. M. MILWARD, .....		..
.. C. D. HARVEY, .....		..
.. G. E. MILLS, .....		..
.. J. H. W. BECKE, .....		..
.. L. O. MOTT, .....		..
.. A. F. M. SLATER, .....		..
.. E. N. T. COLLIN, .....		..

*Volunteer Officers.*

Captain T. LEE, .....	{	
Lieutenant R. K. ELLIS, .....		With 1st Volunteer Coy.
Lieutenant F. C. WRIGHT, .....	}	
Lieutenant T. C. NEWBOLD, .....		Volunteer draft.
Captain G. D. GOODMAN, .....	{	
Lieutenant R. W. WEBB, .....		With 2nd Volunteer Coy.
Lieutenant J. H. F. MARSDEN, .....	}	
Lieutenant J. BLACKWALL, .....		With 3rd Volunteer Coy.

*Attached for Duty.*

Lieutenant W. LEAHY, .....	{	5th Battalion, Royal Munster Fusiliers.
Lieutenant F. S. POPHAM, .....	{	3rd Battalion, Royal Munster Fusiliers.
Civil Surgeon WORTH, .....	{	
.. " CALDWELL, .....		At various times and for varying periods in Medical Charge.
.. " TENNENT, .....		
.. " ALLEN, .....		
.. " LINTON, .....		





## Appendix C.

---

*Roll of Warrant Officers, Staff Sergeants, Colour Sergeants,  
Sergeants, Corporals, and Drummers who embarked with  
the Battalion for active service in South Africa.*

Sergeant-Major C. GURNEY.  
 Quartermaster-Sergeant T. GRIFFIN.  
 Quartermaster-Sergeant, Orderly Room Sergt. W. BOLTON.  
 Sergeant Orderly Room Clerk S. FIELDING.  
 Pioneer Sergeant A. READ.  
 Sergeant Drummer W. ROBERTS.  
 Band Sergeant C. EVANS.  
 Signalling Sergeant S. JONES.  
 Machine Gun Sergeant W. ANDREWS.  
 Transport Sergeant W. MARGERESON.  
 Sergeant Master Tailor J. BROPHY.  
 Sergeant Master Cook F. HOARE.  
 Colour-Sergeant T. MURPHY, ... .. "A" Company.  
 .. .. C. RANDALL, ... .. "B" ..  
 .. .. W. ROBERTS, ... .. "C" ..  
 .. .. H. GIRLING, ... .. "D" ..  
 .. .. A. TOBBELL, ... .. "E" ..  
 .. .. M. CORRIGAN, ... .. "F" ..  
 .. .. A. EWIN, ... .. "G" ..  
 .. .. J. HERROD, ... .. "H" ..  
 No. 3561, Sergt. M. McPHERSON.  
 .. 3954. .. F. SIMPSON.  
 .. 4566. .. T. THORPE.  
 .. 4236. .. A. JACKSON.  
 .. 4007. .. T. JOYCE.  
 .. 4340. .. H. FOULDS.  
 .. 3126. .. H. WARREN.  
 .. 2261. .. J. CAUDWELL.  
 .. 2485. .. E. POLLARD.  
 .. 2878. .. J. BINKS.  
 .. 2951. .. W. COOPER.  
 .. 2300. .. W. STORER.  
 .. 2894. .. R. DODD.  
 .. 85. .. W. HEAPY.

*Roll of Warrant Officers, &c.—Continued.*

No. 1774.	Sergt. J. BEECROFT.
„ 2225.	„ J. MUSSON.
„ 2510.	„ E. LOVATT.
„ 2889.	„ E. ROWELL.
„ 3639.	„ F. PARKER.
„ 3942.	„ E. SPENCER.
„ 4202.	„ J. ROBERTS.
„ 4308.	„ C. WILLMOTT.
„ 4312.	„ E. ROBINSON.
„ 4440.	„ W. SEATON.
„ 4446.	„ G. CRAPPER.
„ 4553.	„ A. GRANT.
„ 4591.	„ G. WILSON.
„ 4687.	„ O. GEISSLER.
„ 4715.	„ S. GOOD.
„ 4789.	„ J. GILHAM.
„ 5112.	„ J. ENGLAND.
„ 5115.	„ A. ARNETT.
„ 5146.	„ C. TURTON.
„ 5157.	„ W. WELLS.
„ 5276.	„ H. BROMPTON.
„ 5083.	Lie.-Sergt. G. CARRINGTON.
„ 3431.	„ „ W. SIMS.
„ 2251.	„ „ G. COOPER.
„ 2181.	„ „ A. DRAPER.
„ 3167.	„ „ J. EVANS.
„ 3010.	„ „ G. CURSLEY.
„ 2630.	„ „ H. ELLIS.
„ 2184.	„ „ G. BRIGGS.
„ 2195.	„ „ H. WINN.
„ 4275.	„ „ F. STOKES.
„ 5272.	„ „ J. MALLET.
„ 2380.	Corporal D. COGGINS.
„ 2382.	„ W. WITTS.
„ 2487.	„ W. CARBURY.
„ 2542.	„ J. DEXTER.
„ 2778.	„ E. WALKER.
„ 3539.	„ H. BEET.
„ 4046.	„ A. SMITH.
„ 4159.	„ A. PAYNE.





*Roll of Warrant Officers, &c.—Continued.*

No.	4364.	Corporal H. STEVENSON.
..	4367.	.. J. BRADSHAW.
..	4468.	.. W. BEDFORD.
..	4546.	.. W. SIMPSON.
..	4606.	.. C. FASHAM.
..	4629.	.. F. WARD.
..	4730.	.. A. FRANCIS.
..	4763.	.. W. TINSLEY.
..	4801.	.. E. GREGSON.
..	4831.	.. B. HASKARD.
..	4918.	.. J. HENSHAW.
..	5013.	.. J. HIND.
..	5053.	.. W. COXON.
..	5137.	.. J. DAVIS.
..	5210.	.. H. TYERS.
..	5411.	.. C. BARTON.
..	5422.	.. C. CHAMBERS.
..	5453.	.. E. COPE.
..	5526.	.. W. WILSON.
..	5531.	.. G. ROPER.
..	5633.	.. R. CASTOR.
..	5664.	.. J. BEDFORD.
..	4259.	.. P. MORLEY.
..	4770.	.. F. SARGENT.
..	4249.	.. E. LINDLEY.
..	4592.	.. T. MUNRO.
..	5117.	.. J. TOMLINSON.
..	2522.	.. A. EDGE.
..	2899.	.. J. WEBB.
..	2867.	.. R. PINNOCK.
..	2492.	.. T. JOHNSON.
..	3116.	.. S. ROBERTS.
..	3114.	.. F. HICKLING.
..	2230.	.. C. GATES.
..	2825.	.. W. DOWSON.
..	2518.	.. W. ROBINSON.
..	3157.	.. T. WHITE.
..	2486.	.. C. SHARDLOW.
..	2902.	.. W. BISHOP.
..	2833.	.. A. SMITH.



*Roll of Warrant Officers, &c.,—Continued.*

No. 2640,	Corporal A. KNIGHT.
.. 4447,	.. W. LOUCH.
.. 2887,	.. D. WARNER.
.. 3041,	.. R. YARDLEY.
.. 4376,	Drummer A. RISTE.
.. 3341,	.. I. ROWARTH.
.. 2226,	.. J. SMALLEY.
.. 3593,	.. S. ELLIOTT.
.. 2200,	.. A. SHAW.
.. 1175,	.. H. SMITH.
.. 2476,	.. A. REID.
.. 2923,	.. H. SMITH.
.. 3478,	.. J. POTTINGER.
.. 4019,	.. W. COLES.
.. 4105,	.. T. UNWIN.
.. 4436,	.. F. VICKERS.
.. 4509,	.. T. JOY.
.. 4551,	.. H. CHILLENOR.
.. 4599,	.. T. REECE.
.. 4658,	.. W. KERR.
.. 4790,	.. G. LEAHY.
.. 4875,	.. E. GOODMAN.
.. 5489,	.. W. FREARSON.





## Appendix D.

---

*Extract from a Speech made by General Viscount Kitchener of  
Khartoum, G. C. B., O. M., G. C. M. G., on the 5th  
August, 1902, when present at the Welbeck  
Tenants Agricultural Society  
at Welbeck Abbey, Nottinghamshire.*

“You will be interested, I am sure, also to know that the Yeomanry of this neighbourhood did excellent service, and that your Territorial Regiment—the Sherwood Foresters—have always distinguished themselves in a most marked manner during this war. They were one of the Battalions that I *most trusted*, and on numerous occasions which you could perhaps remember, when they were under Colonel KEKEWICH and Colonel DIXON and were attacked by vastly superior numbers, they showed what true British Soldiers are and gave them a very good licking.”

---

### Appendix E.

RANK AND NAME.	ACTION, ETC. FOR WHICH MENTIONED.	DATE OF GAZETTE.	AWARD GRANTED.
Local Major-General H. L. SMITH-DORRIEN. D. S. O.	(1.) When in Command of 19th Infantry Brigade rendered valuable and distinguished service on each occasion on which his Brigade was engaged.  (2.) Has done extremely well with 19th Brigade. He has shown exceptional aptitude for command in the field, being sound in judgment, quick to see and act, and full of resource. He is, moreover, a good organiser, and possesses in a marked degree the confidence of those in his command.	March 31st, 1900. (Lord ROBERTS.)  April 2nd, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	Promoted Major-General.
Lt.-Colonel H. C. WYLLY.	(3.) General good service.  .....	June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)  April 8th, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)	Companion of the Order of the Bath.





RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICE FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Capt. T. H. M. GREEN,	<p>(1.) At Diamond Hill on 12th June, commanded the Company which advanced on the extreme right of the Brigade. He led his Company up to within 800 yards of the enemy, and when ordered by Brevet Colonel G. G. CUNNINGHAM to withdraw to a less exposed position, did so most skillfully although himself suffering from a very painful wound. Colonel CUNNINGHAM speaks most highly of Capt. GREEN'S conduct.</p> <p>(2.) General service.</p>	.....	.....
Capt. P. G. RIGBY.	<p>(1.) At Diamond Hill led his Company to an advanced position in support of Capt. GREEN'S and throughout the day was exposed to a hot fire. He showed much coolness and skill in the handling of his men.</p> <p>(2.) Repeatedly volunteering for special and dangerous service.</p>	<p>September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)</p> <p>.....</p> <p>September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.) and June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)</p>	<p>D. S. O.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Brevet Major.</p>



RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICE FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Brevet Colonel G. G. CUNNINGHAM.	(1.) General service.	.....	.....
(Brought to notice while serving in the Battalion, and by Lord ROBERTS when Commanding a Brigade.)	(2.) Has been in Command of a Brigade in the Rustenburg District for some months. He has acquitted himself well and to my satisfaction. I consider him a promising Commander. (Lord ROBERTS).	April 2nd, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	Companion of the Order of the Bath.
Capt. M. P. PHELPS.	General service.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS).	Brevet Major.
Capt. F. J. RADFORD.	Do.	Do.	.....
Capt. R. P. SADDLER.	Do.	Do.	.....
Capt. R. H. KELLER.	Do.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS).	D. S. O.
Capt. P. F. R. ANLEY.	(1.) General service.  (2.) For good service in the Magaliesberg in September, <i>i.e.</i> , keenness and energy displayed in capturing prisoners from 1st to 15th September, 1901.	Do.  and October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER).	.....  .....





Lieut. A. S. MURRAY,	(1.) General service. (2.) Keeness and energy displayed in capturing prisoners from 1st to 15th September, 1901.	..... .....	..... .....
Lieut. C. J. L. GILSON,	(General service. (2) Good service and gallantry at Vlakkfontein.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	.....
Lieut. H. V. RHODES,	(1.) General service. 2. Do.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.) and June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)	..... .....
Lieut. R. S. PORHAM,	(1.) General service. 2. Specially recommended for gallant conduct at Bethulie when he removed the dynamite charges from the Road Bridge thus preventing its destruction.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.) and June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)	..... D. S. O.
Lieut. W. H. WILKIN,	(General service.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	.....
Lieut. F. A. C. WRIGHT, (1st Volunteer Coy.)	(General service.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	.....

RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICE FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Lieut. & Qr.-Mr. F. TYLER.	General service.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	.....
Lieut. G. L. H. MAXBY.	Good leading in action at Vlakfontein, 29th May, 1901.	July 28th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	.....
2nd Lieut. M. B. RIMINGTON.	Good Service in action at Vlakfontein, 29th May, 1901.	.....	.....
2nd Lieut. H. M. MULWARD.	Good example and bravery in close fighting round the guns of 28th Battery at Vlakfontein, May 29th.	October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	.....
2nd Lieut. G. E. MILLS. (since dead.)	Gallantly encouraging his men at the attack on the camp at Moedwil, 30th September, 1901.	.....	.....
Major C. N. WATTS. (1) Was not posted to Battalion at the time.	(1.) Very useful service on Lines of Communication as Station Staff Officer, Mooi River and Volksrust, and latterly as Commandant, Volksrust.	March 30th, 1900. (Genl. Sir R. BULLER.)	.....
	(2.) Good work throughout the campaign, especially at Moedwil, 30th September.	March 8th, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)	Brevet Lieut.-Colonel.





Capt. L. ST. H. MORLEY,	Good work throughout the campaign.	.....	.....
Lieut. M. B. WEBB,	Do.	.....	.....
Lieut. G. MAYALL,	Do.	.....	.....
2nd Lieut. M. K. HODGSON,	Do.	.....	.....
Major F. C. SHAW,	(1.) General service whilst serving with General BRUCE HAMILTON as Brigade Major.	April 2nd, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	Brevet Lieut.-Colonel.
	(2.) Do.	June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)	.....
Capt. F. H. WELDON,	General service whilst serving with Major-General SMITH-DORRIEN as Brigade Major.	Do.	D. S. O. and qualified for employment on the Staff.
Capt. P. LEVEYSON GOWER,	General service whilst serving with No. 2 M. I. Company of the Battalion.	Do.	.....
Capt. F. CASSWELL,	General service whilst serving with No. 1 M. I. Company of the Battalion.	Do.	.....
Lieut. H. F. WATSON,	Do.	Do.	D. S. O.
Lieut. J. H. WYBERGH,	General service whilst serving with No. 2 M. I. Company of the Battalion.	Do.	.....



RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICE FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Ct.-Sgt. C. D. RANDALL,	(1.) At Diamond Hill, was in charge of a half Company, which he led with much boldness, setting his men a splendid example by his coolness and intrepidity. (2.) General service.	.....  4th September, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS).	.....  D. C. Medal.
Sergt. A. JACKSON,	At Diamond Hill, was in charge of the Right Section of Capt. GREEN's Coy., maintained his forward position when the remainder of the Company was withdrawn and for several hours was under a very heavy fire. He controlled his men well and set a good example. (1.) Attending to his wounded Officer at Diamond Hill, a long sustained action of great coolness and devotion lasting for considerably over an hour. (2.) General service.	.....  4th September, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS).	.....  D. C. Medal.
Sergt. J. GILLHAM,	(3.) General service. (1.) Is highly commended by Capt. RIGBY for his coolness and imperturbability when bringing up ammunition under extremely heavy fire. (2.) General service.	.....  4th September, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS).	.....  D. C. Medal.





<b>Private A. SMITH,</b>	(1.) Noticed by the Adjutant and Colonel (JUNNINGHAM for his <i>sangfroid</i> and the excellent example he set when distributing ammunition in the firing line. (2.) General service.	.....	.....
<b>Qr.-Mr. Sgt. W. J. ROBERTS,</b>	(General service.	4th September, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS).	D. C. Medal.
<b>Cr.-Sgt. A. TOBBELL,</b>	Do.	.....	D. C. Medal.
<b>Cr.-Sgt. H. GIRLING,</b>	Do.	4th September, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS).	.....
<b>Cr.-Sgt. D. DENIHAN, (Vol. Coy.)</b>	Do.	.....	.....
<b>Sergt. S. JONES,</b>	(2) Good service throughout the war and at Moedwil in signalling under fire.	.....	.....
<b>Sergt. S. FIELDING,</b>	General service.	4th September, 1901.	.....
<b>Pr.-Sgt. A. READ,</b>	Do.	Do.	.....
<b>Lce.-Sgt. W. DOWSON,</b>	Do.	Do.	D. C. Medal.
<b>Pte. A. BULLOCH,</b>	Do.	Do.	D. C. Medal.
<b>Pte. J. CUNNINGHAM, (since dead),</b>	Do.	Do.	D. C. Medal.
<b>Pte. R. ISAACS (since dead),</b>	Do.	Do.	D. C. Medal.

RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICE FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Pte T. SPENCER,	General service.	4th September, 1901.	.....
Pte. C. MADDISON,	Do.	Do.	.....
Pte. C. O. HICKENBOTTOM, (Volunteer Coy.),	Do.	Do.	D. C. Medal.
Pte. W. MASON (Volunteer Coy.),	Do	Do.	.....
Pte. J. FLAHERTY,	Do.	.....	.....
Pte. J. CAROLINE,	Do.	.....	.....
Pte. C. LYNN,	Do. (2.) Do.	..... .....	..... .....
Qr.-Mr.-Sgt. W. BOLTON,	(1.) General service. (2.) Has served throughout campaign with Btn. Head Quarters. Has latterly done excellent service in command of the few mounted men with the Battalion, who have been almost daily employed for the months of April-September, 1901, on rear and flank guards on the march.	..... July 28th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER).	..... .....





Corporal W. COXON,	(1.) General service. (2.) Chiefly instrumental (with Lieut. Sgt. BAILEY and two men) in 50 captures made by their Coy. in a week's work in the Magaliesberg.	..... July 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER).	..... Promoted Sergeant.
Pte. M. SULLIVAN,	General service.		
Pte. T. TOPHAM,	Do.		
Pte. A. HOLMES,	Do.		
Pte. W. HARRIS,	Do.		
Pte. A. TERRY,	Do.		
Pte. H. MOSS,	Do.	.....	.....
Pte. G. MAY,	Do.		
Pte. A. MARRIOTT,	Do.		
Pte. A. PLACE,	Do.		
Cr.-Sgt. J. HERRON,	(1.) At Vlakfontein; in attack on Convoy after being taken prisoner exhibited great courage and coolness in removing our wounded from bursting of our shells. (2.) Good and reliable service throughout the campaign.	July 28th, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER).	.....
		July 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER).	.....



RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICER FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Sgt. W. Howard,	(1.) Helped to recapture guns at Vlakfontein and general good service. (2.) Repeatedly volunteered for special and dangerous service.	June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER). .....	.....
Sgt. J. EVANS,	Helped to recapture guns at Vlakfontein and general good service.	.....	.....
Lieut.-Sgt. H. BAILEY,	(1.) Helped to re-capture guns at Vlakfontein. (2.) Keeness and energy in capturing 50 prisoners between 1st and 15th Sept.	..... October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER).	..... Promoted Sergeant. Promoted Corporal.
Pte. A. HOLMES,	At Vlakfontein, May 29th, in the attack on Boer position, were the first men up.	July 28th, 1901.	Do.
Pte. G. MARSON,			Do.
Pte. McDERMOTT,			Do.
Pte. T. WORTHINGTON,			.....
Pte. G. WHITEHEAD,	At Vlakfontein; in attack on Convoys after being taken prisoner exhibited great coolness and courage in removing our wounded from bursting of our shells.	.....	.....
Pte. J. WISEMAN,	Noticed by the Officer Commanding Royal Artillery for good conduct at Vlakfontein.	.....	.....
Pte. W. BACON,			





(4778) Pte. C. MADDISON (killed),	Great gallantry and good example at Vlakfontein.	October 8th, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER).	.....
Corpl. J. SIMPSON,	Repeatedly volunteering for special and dangerous service.	June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER).	.....
Sergt. A. FRANCIS,			
(4698) Pte. C. MADDISON,	Repeatedly volunteering for special and dangerous service.	.....	.....
Pte. R. HANDLEY,			
Pte. W. BOYLE,	Keeness and energy in capturing 50 prisoners between 1st and 15th September, 1901. SANDERSON held up 24 men practically single-handed.	October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	Promoted Corporal. Do.
Pte. G. SANDERSON,			
Pte. W. BEES,	Gallant conduct while with Maxim Gun Detachment during attack at Moed- wil, 30th September, 1901. (Gazette.) Was one of the Maxim Gun Detachment which at Moedwil, September 30th, had six men hit out of nine. Hear- ing his wounded comrades asking for water, he went forward, under a heavy fire, to a spruit held by Boers about 500 yards ahead of the Gun and brought back a kettle full of water. In going and returning he had to pass within 100 yards of some rocks also held by Boers, and the kettle which he was carrying was hit by several bullets.	October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	Victoria Cross.

RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICE FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Pte. F. BANCROFT,	At Moedwil rushed out from cover in broad daylight and bayoneted a Boer who was firing at his section.	8th October, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	Promoted Corporal.
Pte. J. BRIERLY,	Gallantly bringing water for the Maxim Gun under very heavy fire from 60-yard range during attack on the Camp, Moedwil.	October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	D. C. Medal. Promoted Corporal.
Pte. F. CARR,	Attending his wounded Officer under heavy fire at Moedwil.	.....	.....
Sergt. C. CHAMBERS,	Gallant conduct while in charge of a picquet at Moedwil. He refused to surrender when called upon and shouted "fight on, fight on," till wounded.	October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	D. C. Medal.
Lee.-Corpl. R. DIXON,	All were members of Sergt. CHAMBERS' picquet and held on till five were killed and seven wounded, while only one was left unhit. They refused to surrender when called upon by the enemy.	October 8th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	Promoted Corporal.
Pte. J. CA'VENEY,		.....	Do.
Pte. P. PICARD,		.....	Do.
Pte. G. NEWTON (died of wounds),		.....	.....





Cr.-Sergt. T. MURPHY,	Recommended for keenness and energy in capturing prisoners, by wading with four men to cut off the retreat of 12 Boers, 15th September, 1901.	.....	.....
Pte. H. MARRIOTT,	This man undoubtedly saved other men from being taken prisoners. He, being in the hands of the Boers, was threatened with being shot if he gave any signal to his own men who were approaching, but he stood up, and warned his party till pulled down by the Boers.	June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)	D. C. Medal.
Pte. W. UPTON,	Always volunteered for any special duty and did first rate work scouting in the Gatsrand.	.....	.....
Corp. E. COPE,	Recommended as being a first rate leader of patrols and doing good work in the Gatsrand.	.....	.....
Pte. J. BIRCHENOUGH,	Recommended as intelligent Scout and good all round M. I. man.	.....	.....
Pte. A. WRIGHT,	Always volunteered for special work.	.....	.....
Pte. S. RAWSON,	Good intelligent Scout.	.....	.....
Pte. T. PEACOCK,	Recommended for good work about the Gatsrand.	.....	.....



RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICER FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Arm.-Sgt. G. AVENEILL,	Serving Maxim Gun to the last at Moedwil, 30th September, 1901.	June 23rd, 1902. (Lord KITCHENER.)	D. O. Medal.
Pte. E. TURNER, (2nd Volunteer Coy.)	Good service at Vlakfontein and Moedwil.	.....	.....
Pte. W. SEYMOUR,	Mentioned by Colonel KEKEWICH, C.B., for good work at Moedwil.	.....	.....
Sergt. R. HARDY,	For good and reliable service throughout the campaign.	.....	.....
Sergt. J. MALLETT,			
Pte. T. GOULD,			
Pte. T. COLUMBELL,			
Pte. G. TAYLOR,			
Pte. J. YEOMANS,			
Pte. C. AGER,			
Pte. G. WYVILL,			





Corpl. H. BEET,	(Gazette.) At Wakkerstroom, April 22nd, 1900. No. 2 Mounted Infantry Company, 1st Derbyshire Regiment, with two Squadrons Imperial Yeomanry had to retire from near a farm under a ridge held by Boers. Corpl. BURNETT, I. Y., was left on the ground wounded, and Corpl. BEET on seeing him, remained behind and placed him under cover, bound up his wounds, and by firing prevented the Boers from coming down to the farm till dark, when Dr. WILSON, I. Y., came to the wounded man's assistance. The retirement was carried out under a very heavy fire and Corpl. BEET was exposed to fire during the whole afternoon.	February 12th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	Promoted Sergt. Victoria Cross.
Sergt. A. W. YOUNG,	In Boer attack on Bank Station, February 12th, carried a wounded man into the trenches, thereby saving his life, and afterwards returned to the fight.	July 28th, 1901. (Lord KITCHENER.)	.....
Ct.-Sergt. A. EWIS,	General service with No. 1 M. I. Company.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	D. C. Medal.
Ct.-Sergt. W. SEATON,	1. General service with No. 1 M. I. Company. 2. At Wolverand, Transvaal, October 28th, returned under fire and picked up a wounded man within 200 yards of the enemy. (Recommended for V. C.)	Do. December 8th, 1901, (Lord KITCHENER.)	D. C. Medal. .....

RANK AND NAME.	RECOMMENDED BY COMMANDING OFFICER FOR.	MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.	AWARD GRANTED.
Sergt. W. COOPER,	General service with No. 2 M. I. Coy.	September 4th, 1901. (Lord ROBERTS.)	.....
Pte. M. BOWEN,	Do. do. 1 do.	Do.	.....
Pte. H. BRADBURY,	Do. do. 2 do.	Do.	.....
Pte. H. LONG,	Do. do. 1 do.	Do.	.....
Pte. J. MURPHY,	Do. do. 1 do.	Do.	.....
Pte. J. SHAW,	Do. do. 1 do.	Do.	.....
Pte. J. BROOME,	Whilst serving with No. 2 M. I. Company, recovering his Officer's horse which had broken away on Grazing Guard owing to heavy fire of Boers, 11th April, 1902.	.....	.....
Pte. T. CHAPMAN,	General service with No. 1 M. I. Company.	.....	.....





Pte. J. HARRIS,	General service with No. 1 M. I. Company.	.....	.....
Ct.-Sergt. E. LOVATT,	Good work generally, and good half Company leader with No. 2 M. I. Company.	.....	.....
Sergt. J. YATES,	Good work generally, and good Section leader with No. 2 M. I. Company.	.....	.....
Corpl. J. JAMES,	Good work generally with No. 2 M. I. Company.	.....	.....
Pte. H. MOULT,	Good Scout with No. 2 M. I. Company.	.....	.....
Pte. F. GROSVENOR,	Good Scout and reliable man, with No. 2 M. I. Company.	.....	.....



## WITH NO. 1 ("B") COMPANY DERBYSHIRE M. I.

No. 1 Derby Company 10th M. I. (which title was kept throughout the South African Campaign) was formed at Phillip's Farm near Cyphergat, Cape Colony, on 25th January 1900; it was commanded by Major GODLEY, with whom were Lieuts. CASSWELL and WATSON.

Colour-Sergeant EWIN was Sergeant-Major and Sergeant DODD, Q. M. Sergeant. The whole of the N. C. O.'s and men with one or two exceptions had been through an M. I. course, and all were volunteers. Sergeants HEAPY, SEATON, STORER and CAUDWELL were section commanders.

The Company was mounted principally on Argentine horses with about one dozen Capes. It had its own transport complete.

The saddles were English-made Colonials. The total strength was 3 Officers and 103 N. C. O.'s and men. It formed part of General GATACRE's 3rd Division.

2nd February.—Colonel SMITH-DORRIEN, on his way to take up his Command of a Brigade, inspected the Company, wishing it the best of luck, and said he would try and get it up to the front; at that time the Company was afraid of being left on the lines of communication.

3rd.—The Company marched to Cyphergat and encamped near Looperberg.

9th.—General GATACRE visited the Coy. for the first time and said he was very well satisfied. Picquets were furnished by the Company.

14th.—Company went to Pope's Farm as escort to Colonel JEFFREYS, R. A. No enemy seen.

15th.—Royal Scots and Irish Rifles M. I. joined 3rd Division, also Berkshires.

16th.—The Company took part in a reconnaissance in force towards Stormberg. Came under shell fire for the first time. It was thought that the Boers had evacuated the position.

20th.—The Company was part of a force sent out under Colonel JEFFREYS, R. A., at 5 a.m., to waylay some Boers returning from Penn Hoek to Stormberg, which they had been attacking. Montmorency's Scouts reported 250 Boers off-saddled at a farm. All mounted troops galloped about 8 miles to surround the farm. On arrival found that our own Scouts by firing had scared the enemy away, and only 2 prisoners were taken. It never stopped raining all day. Column arrived back in camp at 11 p.m.





22nd. General GATACRE inspected all the newly formed M. I. Companies at intervals of 15 minutes. Considering the short time they had been raised the G. O. C. was pleased with all he saw.

23rd.—A strong reconnaissance was sent out towards Stormberg from the 3rd Division, the Company taking part in it. The idea being to try and draw the enemy out from their position, then when well on the move clear the front, and the Infantry to open fire from a hidden position.

The rendezvous for the troops was at Molteno, from there they advanced in the following order:—Montmorency's Scouts on right, the Irish Rifles M. I., Berkshire M. I., Derby M. I., Royal Scots M. I., and Cape Mounted Rifles on left.

23rd.—Officers were sent out with each lot of Scouts, Lieut. CASSWELL being in charge of our Company Scouts.

The Berkshire Scouts reported about 100 of the enemy in position, and the Company Scouts reported about 200. After opening fire the Scouts gradually retired, being followed by the enemy. The Scouts then joined the Company which galloped forward making a demonstration, dismounted, and opened fire, but soon had to retire under shell and rifle fire, followed by the enemy who were advancing right on to our Infantry position. The Company then cleared the front, and to the astonishment of everybody, the guns opened fire, thereby disclosing the position. The enemy immediately retired. On the right flank Montmorency's Scouts were in trouble. All the M. I. Companies were ordered to go to their help, and before they could be extricated (they previously having been absolutely surrounded) they lost (killed) Capt. MONTMORENCY, V. C., 21st Lancers, and Lieut.-Col. HOSKER (a volunteer), and 5 men wounded, and 4 missing. The Company had 2 horses killed and six wounded, no other casualties.

Troops arrived in camp at 8 p.m.

24th.—Capt. ENGLAND died (enteric), was buried this day at Sterkstroom.

25th.—Funeral of Capt. MONTMORENCY and Lieut.-Col. HOSKER. The bodies when found were stripped, nothing but a shirt being left.

26th, 27th and 28th.—The Company out reconnoitring with the Mounted Troops of the Division, no enemy seen.

1st March.—The Company's first real experience of how it can rain in South Africa.

2nd.—The 10th M. I. officially formed—Lieut.-Colonel SITWELL, 5th Fusiliers, in command—composed of the following Companies:—Royal Scots, Northumberland Fusiliers, Irish Rifles and ourselves. Lieut. WATSON made Adjutant 10th M. I.

3rd.—The 10th M. I. moved 2 miles North of Cyphergat and was joined by the remainder of the 3rd Division from Sterkstroom.

4th.—The whole Division attended Church Parade. The Company obtained their Queen's chocolate boxes from the Battalion, also other comforts sent out from England.

5th.—All the Mounted Troops (and guns), viz., 10th M. I. and one Company Berkshire M. I. with Montmorency's Scouts and C. M. R.'s, reconnoitred towards Stormberg. As the troops were not fired upon the order was given to gallop the position in three lines, each about one mile in length, a Company being sent round each flank. Upon arriving at the foot of the almost impregnable position without a shot being fired, the M. I. dismounted, fixed bayonets, and climbed the position, only to find that the enemy had evacuated it at 12 o'clock the night before.

The whole force returned to the old camp with the exception of the Royal Scots Co. M. I. which stayed on the position all night.

6th.—The 3rd Division marched to Stormberg, passing through Molteno on the way.

7th.—Capt. CASSWELL sent by General GATACRE with 10 men to reconnoitre the Steynsburg railway line for 10 miles and send in a report. The line was practically destroyed and all bridges blown up. Upon the return journey came across a Frenchman who lived close to the Stormberg position, and had, from some rocks close to his house, witnessed the fight at Stormberg. He showed the position and explained the dispositions of the troops. His house had been riddled with bullets and shells.

8th.—All the Mounted Troops were ordered to push forward to try and save the bridges at Bethulie. Left Stormberg for Burghersdorp at 9 a.m., arrived 4 p.m., 25 miles. Tents left behind. The last train of Boers only left Burghersdorp two hours before our troops arrived.

9th.—The troops left camp at 11 a.m., arrived Osfontein 2.30 p.m., 11 miles.

Scouts reported 400 of the enemy between us and Bethulie Bridge, the remainder of the enemy were entrenched on the Free State side of the Orange River protecting the bridges.





10th.—Marched to Knapdaar, 25 miles, still no enemy seen: they were retiring rapidly over the Orange River.

11th.—Marched for Bethulie Bridge, when within about 6 miles from it heavy firing heard. Guns and all troops sent forward as hard as they could go to support C. M. R.'s and Montmorency's Scouts, who had taken up a position overlooking the bridge; just as they arrived, the railway bridge was blown up. Several attempts were made to blow up the road bridge, but each time the enemy failed to do so owing to the well directed fire of the C. M. R.'s, who had taken up a position in some buildings near the bridge (Colony side). The right half Company under command of Lieut. CASSWELL held a position on the extreme right flank about 200 yards from the railway bridge, the left half under Major GODLEY in support. It was opposed to about 200 of the enemy entrenched on the river bank about 800 yards away, and one gun distant about 1,500 yards.

11th and 12th.—The Company stayed in their position that night and the whole of the next day, being shelled most of the time, but without effect, except a few horses wounded.

The Mounted Troops were relieved by the Infantry Brigade including the 1st Derbyshire Regiment.

13th.—The Mounted Troops retired about 2 miles and bivouacked, being relieved by the Infantry.

14th.—The Company sent to Venterstad, 30 miles west, to collect arms and ammunition, also to commandeer horses and wagons: 6 days were to be spent in doing this.

Major GODLEY received arms, etc. in the Court House.

15th.—Wire from Gen. GATACRE to return to Bethulie at once.

16th.—Marched to Bethulie. On arrival found that the 3rd Division had crossed the river, and were reported to be encamped north of the Town, found the troops had moved on, horses too done to go further; bivouacked for the night; had ridden 35 miles.

16th.—An ostrich trekked with the Company for 2 days, conforming to the pace; he was a fine bird with beautiful plumage, but he lost most of his feathers before the Company parted with him!

Marched to Springfontein (26 miles), and caught up the 3rd Division.

17th.—The fat Argentine horses were giving out daily, the Company was sadly below strength, every effort was made to collect horses as we marched along, with good results.



19th. Lieut. CASSWELL and 10 men went as escort to Capt. TENNANT, R. A., Intelligence Officer, 3rd Division. About 20 farms were visited and searched for arms and ammunition.

Several rifles were collected (but no Mausers) and a small quantity of ammunition.

Trekkel 30 miles, slept the night in a barn on some bundles of hay.

The following morning visited other farms, returned to Springfontein about 4 p.m., having ridden 20 miles.

21st.—The simple fact of the 5th Fusiliers Captain being late for breakfast caused the Derby M. I. to be sent on Detachment in their place, and so saved them participating later in the Reddersburg disaster. The Company was sent to occupy Phillipolis, by order of General GATACRE, and issue Lord ROBERTS' proclamation; also to collect arms and ammunition 28 miles west of Springfontein. Arrived at 7 p.m., heartily welcomed by two Englishmen (a Mr. MILDMAN and Mr. DAVIS) who told us they had been insulted on every possible occasion by the Dutch inhabitants. Twenty of the enemy galloped out of the Town as we marched in. We were the first troops to occupy the Town.

21st. The Englishmen reported that there was a Commando 600 strong only a few miles from the Town. Picquets were put out on the main roads leading to the Town, and we quite expected an attack. We heard afterwards that the Boers thought we were the advanced party of General CLEMENTS' force, and that we were strongly supported.

The next morning General CLEMENTS' force arrived 2 miles south of the Town.

22nd.—Major GODLEY issued Lord ROBERTS' proclamation, but the inhabitants refused to distribute them, all being very bitter against the English.

23rd.—Major GODLEY and Lieut. CASSWELL met Gen. CLEMENTS (at the Court House), who arrived with an escort of 200 6th Dragoons, and a flourish of trumpets. He read Lord ROBERTS' proclamation and his own to all the Burghers who had returned to their farms. Afterwards hundreds of rifles were given up (but few Mausers) and many a Burgher took the oath of allegiance, only to break it the first time a Commando came along.

26th.—General CLEMENTS' Column of 7,000 men passed through Phillipolis. Capt. CASSWELL went with a patrol to outlying farms issuing proclamations.





27th.—Major GODLEY and Capt. CASSWELL with the Company arrested Gen. GROBLAAR and his brother (Commissary-General) at their farms after a 20-mile ride, and took them prisoners back to Phillipolis, having ridden 40 miles.

29th.—Capt. CASSWELL, with 40 men, took General GROBLAAR into Springfontein and handed him over to General GATACRE. The meeting of the Generals was very interesting, as it was GROBLAAR who defeated Gen. GATACRE at Stormberg.

30th.—Instead of returning to Phillipolis in order to join the 10th M. I., an order came for the two Derby M. I. Companies to march to Bloemfontein, as they had been specially selected to take part in the general advance. This was afterwards cancelled on arrival at Bethanie.

31st. Major GODLEY and Company joined 10th M. I., Lieut. CASSWELL remaining in charge of the prisoners, who were allowed to occupy a farm house.

1st April.—The 10th M. I. started to march to Bloemfontein, arrived Jagersfontein, 25 miles. The baggage did not arrive until 9 p.m.

2nd.—Arrived Edenburg, 23 miles, there caught up the Battalion (Sherwood Foresters) who were split up on the lines of communication.

3rd.—Marched to Bethanie Station. Before starting, the 10th M. I. got orders from Gen. GATACRE to drop Companies at different posts on the railway.

Major GODLEY got orders that our Company would go on to Bloemfontein, thence with the main Army to Pretoria.

At 10 p.m. Lieut. PERCIVAL, 9th M. I., reported to Gen. GATACRE that a force which had been sent out by him, on its way to Bethanie had been surrounded by the enemy and wanted assistance. The force consisted of half Battalion Irish Rifles, and one M. I. Company. One M. I. Company N. Fusiliers under Lieut. CASSWELL was sent on patrol with 50 men at 8 a.m. to hold a neck, through which the troops, going to the assistance of the surrounded Column, would have to pass.

4th.—Patrol arrived in position at 4.45, overlooking the Town of Reddersburg. At 5 a.m. the firing commenced, and continued until 9 a.m., at which time the Column, including 2 Companies 10th M. I., surrendered. All Officers killed. Our men (prisoners) could be distinctly seen being dragged away by the enemy.

Several messages had been sent to Gen. GATACRE by Capt. CASSWELL, informing him of the situation. The advanced party of the relieving force arrived at the neck at 8 a.m.

A reconnaissance by all the Mounted Troops was made towards Reddersburg, but upon being fired upon, they were ordered to retire.

The position where the fight took place was about 6 miles from the nek.

Lieut. CASSWELL, with 10 men, went on the way to Edenburg to stop the 8th Hussars from going to Reddersburg. The Regiment was luckily met with after only going a few miles, and the patrol retired with it to Bethanie.

Upon arriving at Bethanie it was found that the Division had gone to Reddersburg after all; after off-saddling for a couple of hours, marched to Reddersburg, arrived at 11 p.m.

5th.—At 12 midnight we saddled up and the whole Division marched back to Bethanie (it was reported that the Boers had been strongly reinforced), arriving at 6 a.m. the following morning. Both men and horses were dead beat, the patrol having been in the saddle from 3 a.m. to 6 a.m. the following morning.

10th.—Capt. CASSWELL and 30 men on picquet.

Gen. CHERMSIDE took over the 3rd Division from Gen. GATACRE.

11th.—The Division marched to Reddersburg, the M. I. encamped 2 miles north of the Town; rained all night, everybody washed out of the bivouacks.

13rd.—Capt. CASSWELL went out commandeering horses; got 10.

14th.—The Column only marched 6 miles to Rosendal Farm, as the ground was so heavy the baggage could not get along. Capt. CASSWELL went upon a patrol to sketch a road for 7 miles in the direction of the enemy, and report upon a camping ground for the troops for the next day.

15th.—The Column did not move.

Hundreds of troops joining Column every day, fighting expected daily.

19th.—Column marched about 9 miles; patrols of the enemy met and driven in towards Dewetsdorp, which evidently was our objective.

19th.—After bivouacking on the veldt, at dawn the Mounted Infantry and Yeomanry, commanded by General BRABAZON, reconnoitred towards Wakkerstroom, the M. I. furnishing the advanced patrols with I. Y. in support.





After advancing a few miles, our patrols were fired upon, but the enemy retired; the firing commenced again, and Captain CASSWELL was sent forward by General BRABAZON to find out what was going on; upon going round a kopje he came face to face with a dismounted patrol of the enemy, not more than 80 yards away, who opened fire at once, but neither he nor his horse were hit. The 10th M. I. were then ordered to gallop a kopje, from which they were fired upon. The enemy were driven off and the position occupied; the Company was on the extreme right, there was very little natural cover, and before artificial could be made a tremendous musketry, Pom-Pom, and shell fire was opened upon us, from 1,500 of the enemy. For five hours the M. I. held this position, although the enemy repeatedly tried to turn us out; eventually our guns and Infantry arrived and opened fire. The M. I. were relieved by the Gloucester Regiment.

Our casualties were 6 men wounded and about a dozen horses. But for the fact that the shooting of the enemy was bad, and that the shells did not burst, we should have been very badly mauled.

General RUNDLE, who was watching the fight, complimented the M. I. upon their behaviour. This kopje upon which the M. I. were, eventually proved to be the key of our position and was held by Infantry for the next five days.

21st.—All Mounted Troops under General BRABAZON, and 2 guns, made a reconnaissance in force to try and find out how far the enemy's left flank extended. The M. I. did the reconnoitring. We came in contact with 3 guns and about 600 of the enemy, who when first seen were on the move, going in the direction of Wepener. They took up a position on and near "Lonely Kopje" about 1 mile east of Dewetsdorp.

The Boers, as it was afterwards proved, were then actually leaving Dewetsdorp.

After about 2 hours' fighting the enemy started to work round our right flank, having obtained reinforcements. Montmorency's Scouts, commanded by Captain MCNEIL, were sent off to occupy a high ridge on the right, but the enemy arrived first and opened fire; the Scouts retired, and Mr WINSTON CHURCHILL (who had gone out with them) in trying to mount fell to the ground, his saddle slipping round and his horse galloping away. One of the Scouts galloped back, put him on his horse, and carried him out of fire, then his horse, which was riddled with bullets, fell dead.

The Scout afterwards got a V. C.



The Company had great difficulty in retiring, as, to get to their horses, they had to go through a melon field. Major GODLEY and Captain CASSWELL were very hard pressed, but were able to dodge the enemy's fire, owing to the black powder which they used in their guns.

22nd.—The Company sent out to occupy a kopje, was heavily fired upon and had to retire. Four guns were brought up, these eventually turned out about 200 of the enemy, when half a Battalion of Infantry occupied the position.

23rd.—The usual shelling and sniping went on all the morning. At 2 p.m. all Mounted Troops and 4 guns under General BRABAZON reconnoitred the enemy's right flank. We were heavily shelled as we left camp, but there were no casualties; the idea being to try and get in connection with reinforcements (General FRENCH); this was done. Our force now consisted of 15,000 men. Rumours of a great fight to take place any moment.

24th.—Saddled up at 5 a.m. ready for a combined attack upon Dewetsdorp. Orders cancelled, the M. I. were heavily shelled, and had to move camp.

The Mounted Troops were sent round the enemy's left flank, the Company being part of the advanced party. There was every indication where the enemy had been, but not a Boer was seen, and Dewetsdorp was occupied without a shot being fired. The Wepener and Taba'nehu Roads had been left open through one of the Columns not going far enough east.

25th.—A patrol from the Company, under Sergt. HEAPY, reported that they had seen the enemy's Convoy on the Wepener Road. This was reported to General RUXDLE, but nothing was done.

A force of mounted men and guns under command of General BRABAZON (the 10th M. I. being part of it) went to the relief of Wepener, marched until it was dark, then bivouacked at Daspoort Farm without rations.

26th.—Arrived at Wepener 8 a.m., only to find again that the Boers had retreated the night before when they heard the relief force was on its way.

28th.—The Column marched back to Dewetsdorp.

29th and 30th.—At 8 p.m. the 10th M. I., guns, and some Yeomanry, commanded by General BRABAZON, left Dewetsdorp, to relieve a Convoy which was surrounded by the enemy on the road to Taba'nehu; marched all night; off-saddled for a couple of hours; then on again:





found the Convoy quite safe, having driven off the enemy: the Boers evidently did not make a very determined attack and cleared altogether upon our arrival. The escort consisted of 2 Companies of Guards, and the Derbyshire Imperial Yeomanry.

1st May.—The Column marched back to Dewetsdorp.

2nd.—The Company marched from Dewetsdorp with the 2nd Royal Scots, and 2 guns, to garrison Wepener. Encamped at Daspoort for the night.

Pte. HILL was accidentally wounded.

Marched to Caledon Bridge and took up part of the position held by the Colonials at the siege of Wepener.

3rd.—Capt. CASSWELL and 25 N. C. O.'s and men went into the Town of Wepener as escort to Lord CASTLETON, who had been sent down by Lord ROBERTS to reassure the people on their farms, whose property had practically been left waste, their horses and cattle being taken by the Colonial Division.

4th.—Capt. CASSWELL and 25 men went on patrol with Lord CASTLETON visiting farms, did 30 miles. Not a Boer to be seen.

5th.—Forty-four of the enemy surrendered; the Company got most of their horses, a very fine lot, all Capes (Colonials).

6th.—The Detachment returned to the Jammersburg Camp, and joined the Head Quarters of the Company.

7th.—The Column left the Jammersburg Camp and took up a position on the high ground south of Wepener, about half a mile from the Basuto border. Capt. CASSWELL and 30 men left behind to guard the Caledon Bridge.

9th.—Detachment returned to Head Quarters, 1 Corporal and 6 men only being left at the bridge. These were relieved daily from Wepener.

10th.—A system of patrolling was organized by the Commissioner, Major WRIGHT, the district being divided into sections, and patrolled by the Company.

25th.—All the troops paraded for the Queen's Birthday, fired a feu-de-joie, then marched past. The Company walked and galloped past. O. C. Troops was Col. MORGAN PAYLOR, Royal Scots.

The Natives from the French Mission at Hermon, Basutoland, came to the parade, afterwards to the camp. A feed was given to them before they returned.

26th.—Major GODLEY and 40 men went upon a 2 days' patrol.

30th.—Capt. CASSWELL and 20 men went on patrol to Daspoort Farm, and searched for arms and ammunition, none found, stayed there the night.

4th June.—Capt. CASSWELL and 20 men went on patrol to Mr. JOUBERT's farm, and searched the house.

14th.—Major GODLEY and 20 men went to Daspoort Farm to confiscate stock.

25th and 26th.—Capt. CASSWELL and 20 men went on escort duty to Dewetsdorp with 2 prisoners—Commandants SWANEPOLE and MACDONALD. Handed over prisoners, stayed the night at the hotel, and marched back to Wepener the next day.

2,000 Boers reported in the neighbourhood, did not see a sign of the enemy on the way back.

28th and 29th.—Capt. CASSWELL and 20 men went on patrol to Greda Farm, near Ladybrand; stayed the night; patrolled all the next day, collected stock, etc., arrived in camp at 8 p.m.

25th July.—Garrison Sports held. The Company won £15. Pte. FOSTER's team won the Wantage Competition. Corpl. STEVENSON's 2nd, 8 teams entered, including 2 teams R. A. Pte. LONGMIRE's team 2nd prize wrestling on horse back.

In the individual competitions Corpl. BOWEN won the 100 yards race.

The  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile race

„  $\frac{1}{2}$  „ „

„ Obstacle race

„ High Jump

and was 2nd in the Hurdle race and 3-legged race.

30th.—The Company received orders to march to Edenburg.

1st August.—The Company left Wepener at 10 a.m. for Edenburg, everybody delighted to go, it was rumoured that on arriving we were to entrain for the Transvaal, to join a Column. Camped at Dewetsdorp (25 miles).

2nd.—Left Dewetsdorp with 39th Battery, Major HANWELL in command. Camped at Keller's Farm (12 miles).

3rd.—Marched to Reddersburg (15 miles).

4th.—Arrived Edenburg; encamped outside that Town. Got orders to march back, leaving half a Company at Dewetsdorp, and half at Wepener.





Back the Company marched, staying one day at Reddersburg, and then into Dewetsdorp (32 miles).

5th.—At Reddersburg great alarm was caused by some of the Police, just about dusk, firing into our camp. After sending patrols out and standing to arms, it appeared that the Police fired about 20 shots (at some buck), these came into our horse lines, and through our tents.

The Police were made prisoners and marched with us to Dewetsdorp.

Capt. CASSWELL with right Half Company stayed in Dewetsdorp.

6th.—Major GODLEY with left went on to Wepener.

15th.—Capt. CASSWELL became Commandant of Dewetsdorp.

27th.—Exciting news from Taba'nchu. A plot discovered to capture place by Boers. Arrests made. Place evacuated by our Troops, who retired on to the Water-works. Patrols sent out all over the country, as Boers reported to be advancing upon Dewetsdorp, only 27 miles away.

Put out extra night picquets.

Capt. CASSWELL received wire from Lord KITCHENER to be prepared to burn all stores and to retreat on to the Basuto border, at a moment's notice.

28th.—Patrols sent out; made plans for clearing. Had wagons packed. Ordered Town to be patrolled at night in case plot was hatching like that at Taba'nchu.

29th, 30th and 31st.—Patrols sent out; enemy reported in immediate neighbourhood, but only the usual few patrols seen.

Capt. CASSWELL received a wire from Lord KITCHENER to try at all costs to reassure the people, as they were beginning to get alarmed and leave the Town. A Variety Entertainment was given by the Company; the whole of the men being present except one man left on each picquet. After it was over, the men quietly went back to their picquets.

1st September.—The Concert certainly seemed to have the desired effect, as no more people left the Town.

The telegraph wires were cut.

2nd.—In the middle of the night the picquets reported mounted men advancing rapidly towards the Town. The Company stood to arms. An Officer of the Malta M. I. arrived with 20 men to report that a Column would come into Dewetsdorp in the morning, at daybreak, and that they had driven the enemy off.



This news was a great relief; the men had been on picquet every night for a week, and then on patrol during the day; the horses were dead beat, besides which, the Company had stood to arms, and the mules been inspanned an hour before daybreak for a fortnight.

2nd.—The left Half Company, under Major GODLEY, had been expecting an attack daily. It was prepared to go over the Basuto border at a moment's notice by order of Lord KITCHENER.

The Transport had been sent over.

The Column came in—2 Companies Malta M. I., 4 Companies Imperial Yeomanry (Scottish), and 2 Howitzers.

3rd.—The Company marched to Wepener after having handed over the stores, etc.

Capt. MARSHALL and Lieut. RITCHIE were with the Malta M. I.

4th.—2 Companies I. Y. and one Company Bushmen arrived from Dewetsdorp.

5th.—The Company was digging all day round the camp, and made Shrapnel proof shelter trenches at the Caledon Bridge.

6th.—All the troops left Wepener except the Company.

12th.—Capt. CASSWELL went over to Dewetsdorp (for a Field General Court Martial) which had been evacuated again. A few Police were there under command of Lieut. BOYLE, who was afterwards shot by the Boers in cold blood, after the capture of Dewetsdorp, by DE WET.

13th to 24th.—Capt. CASSWELL was on the Court Martial the whole of this time, trying Police for cattle lifting.

Wepener was again evacuated, and Major GODLEY marched into Dewetsdorp, where he stayed until the 25th, on the morning of which he got orders for the Company to march to Bloemfontein. Capt. CASSWELL was left behind with 10 men, to take on some Court Martial prisoners; in the afternoon he caught up Major GODLEY at Klipfontein.

27th.—Arrived at Bloemfontein; took over the outposts at Brand Kop (5 miles from the Town on the Kimberley Boshop side) from Capt. COLVILLE, I. Y.

29th.—The Company got orders to leave Bloemfontein, and return to Dewetsdorp with a Flying Column, as the Boers were in possession of the Town again.

Everybody was naturally very disgusted, as we quite thought we should go up the line and join some Columns.





30th.—The Company left Brand Kop with a Flying Column, commanded by Col. ALLEN, consisting of 4 guns 68th Battery, 3 Companies Gloucester Regiment, Gloucester M. I. Company, Royal Irish Coy. M. I., and about 50 mounted troops of sorts: bivouacked for the night about 8 miles south of Bloemfontein.

1st and 2nd October.—Trekkling to Dewetsdorp, information received that the day after Wepener and Dewetsdorp were evacuated by our troops, the enemy reoccupied them.

3rd.—Marched into Dewetsdorp, found that the Town had been occupied again by our troops sent over from Taba'nchu—2 Companies Bedfords, sent in mule wagons, and Bedford M. I. The Company Scouts were fired upon as they occupied the heights above the Town. Capt. CASSWELL and 2 sections sent to give chase, but after firing a few rounds, the enemy retired some miles.

The Column was now split into 2 portions, one in Dewetsdorp, the other started for Wepener, the Company being with the latter: we had only gone 5 miles when we were recalled by Lord ROBERTS, the whole Column bivouacking on the position above Dewetsdorp.

6th.—Sergt. SEATON and 15 men sent out reconnoitring, the Scouts suddenly came across 5 Boers. Pte. PAGE got within 40 yards before he saw them. One Boer, who turned out to be Commandant FOURET, beckoned him to come on, then fired, hitting the horse in the neck, this seemed to paralyze it, as it would not move, PAGE jumped off it and ran for his life and was not hit.

The Boers then galloped off. Had the men not been so scattered all the 5 Boers ought to have been captured.

7th.—Head Quarters and 3 Companies H. L. I., Col. KELHAM in command, and Convoy arrived from Bloemfontein.

8th.—Head Quarters and 3 Companies H. L. I., 2 guns 68th Battery, the Company, and about 30 details under command of Col. KELHAM, left Dewetsdorp for Wepener.

Major GODLEY had been previously asked which place he would like to go to; his decision was a lucky one, as the force left behind under command of Major MASSEY, R. A., was captured in November by DE WET after 4 days' fighting.

9th.—Arrived in Wepener, found Capt. DUNCAN, Royal Scots, and 30 men in possession, having been sent over from Taba'nchu.

10th.—Digging sangars and fortifying position generally. The Company stood to arms at 4.30 a.m.

12th.—Mounted men seen dodging about on the hills about 5 miles away. Capt. CASSWELL sent out to reconnoitre: they turned out to be Police.

17th.—Capt. CASSWELL took a convoy of empty wagons half way to Dewetsdorp, and returned with a full one. Several of the enemy being about. The escort consisted of 30 M. I., 20 Infantry, and a Machine Gun. No enemy seen. Started at 4 a.m., and returned 4 p.m.

4th November.—Three hundred Boers reported to be laagered at Bastard's Drift, Caledon River. Capt. CASSWELL and 20 men sent to verify report, which was false; rode 40 miles. Upon return there were wild rumours of an attack, all the Company slept on a kopje in sangars, and stood to arms at daybreak; no attack.

7th.—H. L. I. Gymkhana. A Policeman from Wepener shot in cold blood by the Boers.

Capt. CASSWELL sent with 30 men as escort to some Engineers who were mending telegraph wires, which had been cut by the enemy between Wepener and Dewetsdorp.

10th.—About this time large parties of the enemy were moving south, going to the Colony, our patrols were constantly exchanging shots and getting driven in; they did excellent work, obtaining most important information, which was wired to the C. in C. through Basutoland.

11th to 19th.—Large parties of the enemy seen from our Cossack Posts on the kopjes overlooking the Caledon River, they seemed to be trekking in the direction of Dewetsdorp.

19th.—The enemy, under command of DE WET and STEYN, fired at the Garrison as they passed Dewetsdorp on their way south. During the night they returned, and quietly surrounded the position, and cut all wires.

20th to 26th.—The Company was patrolling every day towards Dewetsdorp, heavy firing was heard each day, and patrols of enemy met. The Wepener Garrison were all in their sangars day and night for 10 days; a force of the enemy actually arrived within a few miles of the Caledon Bridge, then retired, evidently hearing that a relief force was marching to Dewetsdorp from Edenburg.

On 26th a rider came in with the report that Dewetsdorp had fallen on 23rd. This information Col. KELHAM at once wired to General MACDONALD, who wired back "The information is unfounded." A wire was then sent to C. S. O. Bloemfontein, who replied "Don't believe it."





Our information, as was proved, was absolutely correct.

On the 23rd, Sergt. DODD who had been acting Q. M. Sergt. to the Company from its formation, died of enteric fever. His loss was felt by all.

From 26th until the end of the month there were nothing but rumours of an attack; first from one direction, and then from another, both men and horses were completely worn out. All convoys came through Basutoland from Aliwal North.

29th.—Capt. CASSWELL and Lieut. WATSON mentioned in Lord ROBERTS' despatches. Colour-Sergt. EWIN and Sergt. SEATON awarded the D. C. M.

9th December.—The Company, 2 Companies H. L. I. and 1 gun under command of Major GODLEY, sent out suddenly to the Caledon Bridge, to hold it and the drift, and prevent DE WET crossing upon his return from the Colony. (He eventually crossed at Bastard's Drift, 18 miles south of the Caledon Bridge.)

11th.—Heavy firing heard on both banks of the Caledon. Sergt.-Major EWIN and 12 men, when on patrol surrounded 5 Boers in a farm house, but under cover of darkness 4 managed to escape. A Field Cornet was captured, and badly wounded, and 7 horses were killed. Some of DE WET's despatches were found, but unfortunately lost on the way to camp and never recovered. The enemy's patrol had been sent to reconnoitre the Caledon Bridge, by DE WET, and report in what strength it was being held, and our dispositions.

12th.—Sergt. SEATON and patrol sent out to try and capture 2 Boers wounded the night before, but failed.

13th.—Our patrol saw large parties of the enemy trekking north again. Large Commandos could also be seen going in the same direction. A skirmish took place between the patrols, Sergt. STORER took one prisoner, and in doing so had his horse wounded.

14th.—General KNOX arrived at Daspoort. Boers were laagered only 9 miles north of him; we could see their fires. Sergt. HEAPY patrolling had a narrow shave of having all his men captured; but after fighting for some time he very cleverly got away, only losing 2 men (missing) and 2 horses. One man came in during the night, his horse had been shot and he had hidden until dark, then came into camp. The other man was brought into camp in a Cape cart the next day shot through both legs.



15th.—The force returned to Wepener at 2 a.m. Forty Boers reported 8 miles south of Wepener in the direction of Rouxville. Captain CASSWELL sent out with 40 men to locate the laager. This was done, and it was attacked, but the enemy retired as soon as fire was opened.

Pte. LONGMIRE died of enteric, a very good man, deeply regretted by the whole Company.

17th.—DE WET started another general movement south from the Winburg District.

28th January.—Col. KILHAM got unexpected orders to evacuate Wepener, and march to Aliwal North through Basutoland. All the inhabitants warned to clear out; all stores to be destroyed which could not be carried.

31st.—The troops evacuated Wepener and encamped for the night 8 miles over the border. At Hermon, a French Mission Station, 6,000 bags of mealies left, not destroyed, and a lot of stuff in the different stores which the Boer women took after we had gone.

1st to 10th February. —The Column marched to Mafeteng and stayed there two days whilst stores were being destroyed in Wepener. Then the Column marched through Basutoland with an enormous convoy.

A one-armed Basuto Chief with 20 followers acted as guide and interpreter. HAASEBROCK'S Commando, 600 strong, marched parallel with the Column on the opposite bank of the Caledon. No shots were exchanged. All the drifts were strongly held by Basuto Police who were continually being sniped.

11th.—Arrived in the Herskel District; Basuto guide and escort left the Column.

14th.—The Column marched into Aliwal North.

16th.—The Column marched down the Orange River to Commissie Drift, 16 miles.

Capt. CASSWELL and 50 men, 25 of them H. L. I. (Lieut. CRAGIE HALKETT in command) sent to Rhenoster Hoek Drift.

17th.—Major GODLEY with Head Quarters remained at Commissie Drift. Took over from Major RICHARDSON, H. L. I. The drift was a very awkward one to defend, as it was commanded from both sides of the river, and there was no cover for the horses except the bushes.

19th to 26th.—There were several parties of the enemy on the Free State side of the Orange River, and these on their way to and from





their picquets used to gallop down suddenly to a ridge about 600 yards from the drift, and snipe the camp. As this was a nuisance to everybody it was decided that an attempt was to be made to round up some of them.

Lord LOVAT and Capt. CASSWELL arranged a plan, by which Lovat's Scouts were to cross by the Odendalstroom Drift, and the Company at Venter's Drift, and then co-operate; but as the river was in flood we had to await a favourable opportunity.

1st March.—Capt. CASSWELL received a heliograph message from Lieut. MARTIN, H. L. I. to say that Venter's Drift was fordable.

Sergt.-Major EWIN and 8 men were sent with orders to cross the ford and lie in ambush all day, watching the movements of the enemy, returning at dusk.

To prove that the drift was fordable a man of the H. L. I. walked across, and a Kaffir boy on a horse was sent to test the strength of the stream; he was left stationary as a point for the men to march upon.

Sergt.-Major EWIN formed up the men, and explained the idea and pointed out the ford and the mounted man on the opposite bank; he also told them that, in case they got off the ford, and were obliged to swim, to take hold of the horses' mane, tail, or stirrup leather, taking care to get into the water up stream. The Scouts were started off at 3 horses' lengths distance, Corpl. BRADSHAW leading, as he was a powerful swimmer. All went well for three-fourths of the journey, when it was noticed by those on the bank that the men were going too far to the left. Several men called out "Go more to the right," but as no notice was taken, a man was sent into the water, and he, almost getting up to the rear horse, repeated the caution; this, however, was also disregarded, the Corporal going more to the left still. All at once his horse began to swim, the others closed up, and followed suit. The men suddenly lost their heads and threw themselves into the water *down* stream, and were washed away from their horses; nevertheless they struck out bravely for the bank, but had only gone a few yards when they simultaneously called out "Help" and disappeared. These were Corpl. BRADSHAW, Ptes. MURPHY, HULL, COSTAL and TURNER. They were never seen again; one body only was recovered, that of Pte. HULL, found 20 miles down the river. The Detachment of the H. L. I. did everything in their power, the men diving for hours at the place where their comrades were last seen. All the horses swam to the bank and were recovered.

14th.—Major GODLEY and Head Quarters went to Odendalstroom, leaving 12 men at Commissie Drift.

15th.—Sergt.-Major EWIN and 17 men sent from Rhenoster Drift to join Head Quarters of the Company.

16th to 20th.—The Engineers put down three mines, one went off the first night, blowing up some cattle.

21st.—Venter's Drift, 5 miles south of us, sniped all day by Boers, we saw them but they were out of shot.

23rd.—A Burgher came to the opposite side of the river with a flag of truce, said he wanted to surrender; we had no boat, and as the river was unfordable, told him to swim, but he would not, so went away; we kept all the men out of sight as we thought he was a spy.

24th & 25th.—Built stone walls round all the tents as protection against snipers; the day before several bullets had gone through the tents.

26th.—Major GODLEY got orders from the War Office to return to England to join the 2nd Battalion as second in command.

27th.—Capt. CASSWELL went to Odendalstroom to take over the Company from Major GODLEY, returning the same day.

28th.—Capt. CASSWELL handed over the detachment to Lieut. HALKETT, H. L. I., then went to Odendalstroom, and finished taking over the Company.

Major GODLEY left for Aliwal North *en route* for England.

Sergt.-Major EWIN applied for by Major MARSHALL to go as Regimental Sergt.-Major to 10th M. I.

2nd April.—Rumours of KRITZINGER's and VAN REENAN's Commandos, only 16 miles away, going to try and force a passage over the drift. All picquets doubled.

3rd.—The Company stood to arms at 4.30 a.m. Sergt.-Major EWIN left the Company. Sergt. SEATON became the Company Sergt.-Major.

4th.—Capt. CASSWELL and 30 men, with 2 days' rations and forage, left Odendalstroom at 4 a.m. to join a scratch Column, under command of Major A. GARLAND, H. L. I., 6 miles south of Rhenoster Hoek; the idea being to occupy a position to prevent Boers who were being driven up against the Orange River, heading east, with 4 Columns in pursuit. The 4 Columns were commanded by Col. HERBERT, Col. GORRINGE, Col. DE LISLE, and Major MURRAY.

Everybody thought we were in for a good fight, until a helio message arrived to say that the Boers had crossed the river at Ondfontein Drift, in a boat which they had found on the Caledon River, and brought across.





The Boers were roughly handed by a Column when they got across, but they managed to get away.

5th.—Returned to Odendalstroom.

7th.—The Company got orders to march to Springfontein.

8th.—The Company concentrated at the farm of an Englishman, Mr. DAVIS (Modderbult), and stayed there the night.

9th.—The Company marched at 6 a.m. to Balkfontein, 15 miles.

10th.—Arrived at Bethulie, 15 miles.

11th.—Marched to Providence Farm, occupied by the Volunteer Company of the S. W. Borderers (17 miles).

12th.—Arrived at Springfontein, 13 miles; pitched camp.

13th.—The P. M. O. reported that the lines were too near the Base Hospital, so had to strike tents and pitch another camp. Lieut. MARSHALL, Loyal North Lancashire Regiment, came to the Company temporarily for duty as Capt. CASSWELL had no Subalterns.

14th.—Lieut. MARSHALL and 40 men sent to Providence Siding to escort a convoy to Springfontein.

15th.—The Company met one of the Malta Companies belonging to Col. HICKMAN's Column; the Officers were Cpts. WAY and HOBBS.

17th.—A patrol of 20 men under Sergt.-Major SEATON sent out to locate a party of the enemy. None seen.

24th.—The Boers took 180 horses from a Government farm close to camp during the night, but they were all screws.

27th.—Sergt. BRANSON and 40 men sent to Kuilfontein to join a party under an Officer of the South Lancashire Militia, to round up horses. They were fired upon after they had gone only a few miles, and were ordered to retire as there were no troops to support them.

29th.—The Company, under command of Capt. CASSWELL, went to Prior's Siding on the Norval's Pont Line to locate 200 Boers, rode 40 miles, not a sign of the enemy. The O. C. 10th M. I., Major MARSHALL, came to inspect the Company.

2nd May.—The Company went out with the Armoured Train and General HART, to drive off about 100 of the enemy who had taken up a position commanding the railway, a few miles north of Bethulie, stopping all traffic. The Boers were driven off and the line reopened. (Marched 40 miles.)



3rd.—The Company patrolled the railway half way to Bethulie; left camp at dawn, returned at dusk. 60 Yeomanry came out as a support to the Company.

5th.—The Company went out after 40 Boers who were in the act of raiding the Government Cattle Farm. The enemy cleared to the hills before we could get at them. No damage done.

8th.—Capt. CASSWELL with 30 men of the Company and 50 Yeomanry sent to the Government Cattle Farm for the night (by order of Gen. BRUCE HAMILTON). It was reported that 200 of the enemy were going to raid the cattle. An ambush was laid, but the whole scheme spoilt by Capt. BRUCE I. Y., coming to visit his men from the camp, although there had been a distinct order given that nobody was to visit the farm. To shoot on sight was the order given to the sentries, with the result that Capt. BRUCE was nearly shot by Pte. MELLORS of the Company.

The same evening General SMITH-DORRIEN, D. S. O., passed through Springfontein on his way to England; but being on picquet the Company did not see him, and all were bitterly disappointed.

10th.—The following prizes were obtained by the Company at the Yeomanry Sports:—

1st Prize	Tent pitching (a team).
1st ..	Boat and Saddle race, Pte. BOOTH.
2nd ..	.. .. STAFFORD.
3rd ..	.. .. WALKER.
1st ..	$\frac{1}{4}$ Mile, Pte. BOWEN.
1st ..	$\frac{1}{2}$ .. Pte. BOWEN.
1st ..	100 Yards Pte. BOWEN.
1st ..	Sack Race Pte. BOOTH.

The strength of the Yeomanry at this time was 1,500. There was also the 3rd Battalion South Lancashire Regiment in the Garrison, and half a Battery.

Two Yeomen came up to see the men of the Company, and turned out to be men left behind in prison by the Battalion with a sentence of one year and discharge with ignominy. They were getting 5/- a day pay, the men of the Company getting 12. As they were inclined to jeer at the men, they were turned upon and kicked out of the lines in a very short time!

11th.—Lieut. W. BEATTY, 6th Royal Warwicks. arrived to do duty with the Company *vice* Lieut. MARSHALL to England.





23rd.—The Company had to hand over their mules (16) to the Transport Officer, getting 10 horses in their place; the mules were in the pink of condition, and had been with the Company from its formation.

26th.—General HART visited the Company and went round the horse lines. He was full of praise, said he had heard very good accounts of the Company, and its smartness generally. He said the horses were in excellent condition and fit, as proved by the amount of work they had done lately. He congratulated Capt. CASSWELL upon the smartness and efficiency of his Company.

29th.—The Company made a useful reconnaissance west of the railway; a lot of forage was destroyed.

2nd June.—Col. HICKMAN's Column brought in 23,000 sheep and 1,100 head of cattle; whether they were properly handed over, nobody seems to know, but the fact remains that that night the Boers captured the lot, and it was not discovered until about 2 a.m. the next day.

Capt. CASSWELL and 90 men (40 from the 1st M. I.) sent out at daybreak to try and capture the cattle and sheep stolen the night before. It was some time before the trail could be found, when once it was, it was easy to get the sheep; after riding 14 miles they were in flocks all over the veldt. About 600 of the cattle were recaptured.

Nearly 100 of the enemy sniped the party most of the way back, but luckily there were no casualties.

When the sheep were counted there were 24,000, so 1,000 extra had been captured.

Getting the sheep back was no joke,—but for the goats as leaders it would never have been done. When within 6 miles of camp not one would move, so they were left until the morning in charge of 10 Kaffirs. The Company got great kudos for this from General HART.

10th, 11th & 12th.—The Company entrained at 5 p.m. for Smaldeal; the train stayed the night at Jagersfontein Road, arrived Smaldeel 7 p.m. the next day, slept that night in the train; detrained the following morning and heard for the first time that the 10th M. I. under command of Major MARSHALL was concentrating, preparatory to going on the trek. Everybody was delighted to have done with lines of communication.

The Company took its own transport with it, receiving back mules, but not the original ones.

13th.—The Company, and the Berkshire M. I., about 200 men, under command of Capt. CASSWELL, marched to Vet River, under instructions received from Col. BARKER, R. A. (commanding at Winburg).

14th.—Capt. FOLEY, Berkshire M. I., took over command from Capt. CASSWELL, being the Senior Officer.

14th.—A night march was made in conjunction with four other Columns, the idea being to round up the Tabacksberg. Marched to Ondervacht (13 miles).

15th and 16th.—Arrived at the rendezvous. Closed in on the Tabacksberg, heavy firing heard, but the enemy did not break our way. Capt. CASSWELL's Groom, Pte. SMALLEY, was taken prisoner (wounded), his horse had been killed under him. The Boers made him run until, from loss of blood, he fainted; then a horse was given him, and with his wound undressed he was made to act as an Orderly the whole day, whilst the enemy rode about watching our movements. He was afterwards released and was driven into Smaldecle by a Kaffir boy in a Cape cart.

19th.—The 10th M. I. now consisted of our Company, Berkshir Me. I., Royal Scots, and Northumberland Fusiliers.

Commandant HAASEBROCK with 150 men, attacked the Cattle Guard, consisting of Yeomanry. The Corporal and 1 man were killed, and 2 wounded. The 10th M. I. were ordered to saddle up, the Company was the first to turn out, and as it had no Officers, (both being on the sick list), Major MARSHALL took command. Lieut. ROSTRAM, North. Fusiliers, went with him. At the end of a gallop of 8 miles without a halt, only a few of the better mounted men were with the Officers.

A Boer was seen only 200 yards away; Major MARSHALL ordered some men to dismount and fire. Sergt.-Major EWIN, R. S. M., 10th M. I., said he could ride the man down, and asked leave to do so, which was granted; Sergt.-Major SEATON joined him. When about 20 yards from the Boer and gaining upon him every stride, he suddenly wheeled to the left behind a kopje out of sight; thinking to gain ground the Sergt.-Majors rode straight at the kopje and were almost at the top when about a dozen of the enemy jumped up and fired point blank at them. The chased Boer appeared mounted by the side of the others, and fired at Sergt.-Major EWIN, holding his rifle in one hand, and hitting him in the chest. Sergt.-Major SEATON was not hit, but his horse was badly wounded in several places; he managed, under a perfect hail of bullets, to gain some cover where he found Major MARSHALL





and the others. The rest of the Company had now come up, half were sent to one flank and half to the other, with the first party in the centre. The firing now was very hot from all sides. Major MARSHALL and Lieut. ROSTRAM were both hit in the legs, Ptes. HUNT and ROSE were killed and Corpl. PAYNE and Pte. ASHMORE badly wounded. The other 3 Companies now coming up, the Boers retired, but for 15 minutes the fire was very hot and the Company was in a tight corner.

24th.—Head Quarters and 200 men (N. Fus. and Berks.) 10th M. I. under command of Capt. Hon. O'BRIEN (N. F.) trekked to Winburg during the night.

Capt. CASSWELL left in command of the other 2 Companies. Major MARSHALL and wounded sent to Bloemfontein.

25th.—Lieut. BEATTY returned to duty from hospital. Capt. CASSWELL, with 200 M. I., left camp at 7 p.m. with the Commandant, Col. MACDONALD, to round up Boers in their farms, (2 Boers shot).

26th.—The 10th M. I. went out after 300 of the enemy who retired at once.

29th and 30th.—Capt. CASSWELL with remainder of 10th M. I. left Smaldec at 12 midnight, arrived Winburg 8 a.m., was met by Col. BARKER, R. A., Commandant.

2nd and 3rd July.—The 10th M. I. (370 strong), guns and Yeomanry turned out for a night march in co-operation with Col. THORNEYCROFT.

Arrived at the Tabacksberg 2 hours before dawn; did not see a Boer; arrived back in camp at 4 p.m. (42 miles).

9th and 10th.—Capt. CASSWELL went out at 9 p.m. with 100 men, to Reitz Drift, to cover the retreat of some cyclists who had gone to make a raid upon Senekal. Nothing exciting happened, about 70 Boers were met on the way back, a skirmish took place, but the enemy retired.

11th and 12th.—The 10th M. I., 2 guns, and 80 Native Scouts went out at 8 p.m. in the direction of the Dornberg. At daybreak about 50 Boers with 6 wagons and 1 Cape cart were located in a farm by the Scouts. The whole show was spoilt by the Scouts opening fire before the farm was surrounded, the result being that all the Boers got away except 1 killed, and 1 wounded; the wagons were captured, and proved to be loaded with salt, on the way to HAASEBROCK's Commando. The Company on the left flank had a great chase after the enemy, but they got too much start. Trekked 40 miles.

14th.—M. I. 300, Yeomanry 300, and 4 guns did a night march of 15 miles, taking 4 days' rations and forage.



•15th.—30 Boers reported off-saddled at a farm. Royal Scots Company sent out; none seen. Marched off at 6 p.m.; trekked all night.

At daybreak Capt. CASSWELL with the Company and 25 N. F. was sent to try and capture some wagons which were reported to be only a few miles ahead. After going about 3 miles the wagons were sighted. Lieut. BEATTY with one section was sent round the right flank, Sgt.-Major SEATON with the other section the left flank, whilst Capt. CASSWELL and the Fusiliers rode straight for the wagons.

16th.—The wagons were escorted by 12 Boers, who opened fire, (nobody was hurt), they then bolted; two of them were ridden down and captured, with 6 wagons and 300 head of cattle. Lieut. BEATTY had only gone half a mile when he surprised 4 Boers; 2 were captured, one by himself; this man when he found he could not get away dropped his rifle, jumped to the ground, and put his hands up; then as BEATTY was dismounting the Boer picked up his rifle, put a cartridge in the chamber meaning to shoot him, but it jammed. BEATTY would have been quite justified in shooting the man, instead of which he kicked him severely, and punched his head. This section also captured 1 Boer at a farm, and 2 wagons. They also located 150 Boers at a farm, and 10 wagons. Capt. CASSWELL sent a message to Col. BARKER, asking for some more men and a gun. Two guns were sent and 200 men under command of Major MARSHALL. In the meantime the Boers took up a very strong position on some kopjes. The position was shelled but it was too strong to attack without risking a great many casualties. Two wagons only were captured, the rest got away.

The Column off-saddled for a couple of hours, then marched 15 miles to Kaffir Kop.

17th.—Trekked back to Winburg.

22nd.—The 10th M. I. (the Company included) with 4 days' rations and forage marched to Vet River, 24 miles.

23rd.—Capt. CASSWELL with his own and the Berkshire Companies left camp at 3 a.m. Major MARSHALL with the two other Companies (Capt. LEVESON-GOWER, Intelligence Officer, Brandfort, with him) later. The idea being to try and round up some Boers who had been giving a lot of trouble to the troops at Einsgevonden. No enemy seen.

25th.—The 10th M. I. under command of Capt. CASSWELL marched to Brandfort.





26th and 27th.—The 10th M. I. leaving camp at 10 p.m. marched to Bushmansberg on the way to Bullfontein, at daybreak reconnoitred through some awful country, Boers were supposed to be about, but as usual they had just cleared; did not arrive in camp until dark.

The 10th left Brandfort for Winburg, bivouacking for the night at Ondervacht Farm.

About 2 a.m. a despatch rider brought orders for the 10th M. I. to return to Brandfort.

29th.—The 10th M. I. marched back to Brandfort.

1st August.—The 10th M. I. left Brandfort and were posted near the railway (not actually on it, as they ought to have been, which future events proved) at intervals from Brandfort to Einsgevonden. The Company was at Hontenbeck Farm. The idea being to prevent Boers crossing the railway from west to east, as they were being driven along by Gen. ELLIOT'S Columns. The Company found 1 Cossack Post by day, and 2 patrols by night in addition to the Line Guard and 3 small picquets.

7th.—One of the Company's Cossack Posts captured. The Post consisted of Corpl. LEGG, Ptes. STAGG, WAIN and STAFFORD. The horses, saddles, and arms were taken, but the men were not stripped nor was their private property taken from them.

The 10th M. I. marched to Karrie Siding; outspanned for an hour; then the Company went out to a position 4 miles west near Tafel Kop; 30 men of No. 12 Composite Company were also there.

The other Companies lined the Modder River.

Lieut. DE PLEDGE and 30 men joined the Company; these were the first and last to be received from the formation of the Company until the end of the war; the strength of the Company before their arrival was 50; the wastage up to date was 50 per cent.

10th.—The drive being over, the 10th M. I. concentrated at Karrie Siding; the remainder of Colonel BARKER'S Column coming in, the whole bivouacked for the night.

11th.—Colonel BARKER'S Column with 9th and 15th M. I. left Karrie Siding at 6 p.m. Blankets sent to Winburg by train; the transport by road under command of Lieut. DE PLEDGE.

12th and 13th.—The Columns arrived at the Tabacksberg at 10 a.m., very few of the enemy seen, (30 miles march). At daybreak a fire was seen in a farm; the Company was sent to reconnoitre.

Four Boers galloped away without saddles and only reins in the horses' mouths. The Company went in hot pursuit, but only managed to get 1 Boer and 1 armed Native, 4 horses and 4 saddles. The bandolier taken from the Boer had Pte. STAGG's name upon it; it had been lost when the man had been captured on the Cossack Post. The ammunition had already been filed down.

13th.—Arrived at the bivouack at 2 p.m., marched for Winburg at 6 p.m., arrived at 2 a.m. Sandy morning, (20 miles), a very bad march, getting a head wind with clouds of dust the whole way.

14th. - The Company was reorganized, making four sections again. Company now 80 strong.

Received orders at 5.30 p.m to march off at 6 p.m.

The following troops went out:—9th, 10th and 15th M. I. with 400 Yeomanry and 4 guns, under command of Colonel BARKER, R. A.

The objective being Commandant HAASEBROCK's Commando, which had been located in the Dornberg.

16th.—The troops marched all night and in the morning closed in on the laager. A small Cossack Post of the enemy, only a few hundred yards from the laager gave the alarm, but the troops opened fire at once and in a few minutes the whole place was a perfect pandemonium. The laager was in a horse-shoe shaped kloof, three sides being commanded by kopjes: these were occupied by our troops. The entrance to the kloof ought to have been held by the Yeomanry, but they came up late, letting out three-fourths of the enemy.

As soon as it was found that the Yeomanry were not in their place. Major MARSHALL sent the Royal Scots Company to block the entrance. The Company fixed bayonets, charged down the slope, and skirmished through the bushes. The whole thing was such a surprise that the Boers scarcely fired a shot, but threw away their rifles, and those who were not killed, or captured, rode away barebacked. Boers were pulled out of their bivouacks, and from all kinds of queer places. There were no casualties on our side. There were 12 Boers killed and 40 captured—several of them being wounded, 40 saddles, several horses, wagons, oxen, etc., etc.

17th.—But for the fact that HAASEBROCK and 90 men had only left the laager the night before, there would have been a much more important haul.

The troops off-saddled for three hours, then marched back to Winburg, having done 60 miles.





22nd.—The 10th M. I. went on a night trek with Col. BARKER'S Column in co-operation with Gen. ELLIOT'S Columns; marched 20 miles, then the Company was sent on another 12 miles to occupy Lu Kop. Arrived just at daybreak, no Boers seen, halted for an hour, then rejoined the Column, marched 6 miles with it and off-saddled for an hour, then returned to Winburg, having marched 60 miles.

26th.—Col. BARKER'S Column, viz., 9th, 10th and 15th M. I., 400 Yeomanry and 4 guns started to trek for the Brandwater Basin in conjunction with Gen. ELLIOT'S Columns, bivouacked for the night at Kaffir Kop (18 miles).

The Company marched out 2 Officers—Capt. CASSWELL and Lieut. BEATTY—and 76 N. C. O.'s and men. Lieut. DE PLEDGE was left at the Dépôt.

27th.—The Column marched to Lu Kop at 2.30 a.m. The 9th and 15th M. I. from here acted independently.

28th.—The Column marched at 6.30 a.m. to Welgeveden, no fighting, all the farms were burnt, and cattle, horses, and sheep collected. The men had plenty of poultry.

29th.—The Column marched to Wonderkop 4.30 a.m. Got into helio communication with Major PINE COFFIN who had sighted a Boer Convoy, went to his assistance, and after a good deal of galloping came up with enemy's Rear Guard, but they were in such a good position that they were able to hold us until the convoy got away: all the horses were beat so the chase was given up. Arrived in camp 5.30 p.m.

Column arrived at Petrosdaal, 15 miles, marching through very bad country; part of the Column was heavily engaged and had several casualties. Sniping continued all day.

The Company was sent back to reinforce escort to the convoy so was out of the fighting.

30th.—The Company was sent out to reconnoitre and clear some farms. Lieut. BEATTY, hearing firing on his right, took a section to find out what it was. A Yeomanry Patrol had been surrounded, Lieut. BEATTY went to its assistance and got it away. (1 Yeoman killed.)

31st.—The 10th M. I. galloped a convoy, capturing 30 wagons, some horses, stores, etc., and 10 Boers. Lieut. DRYSDALE killed, and 2 men captured, all belonging to the Royal Scots.

The Column arrived at Slabbert's Nek.



1st and 2nd September. — It was suddenly discovered that Retief's Nek was not held, so Major MARSHALL with our Company, Royal Scots, and Berkshire M. I. was sent out to occupy it. It was fully expected that the nek would be found occupied by the enemy and a fight would be the result, but it was the best position possible under the circumstances.

2nd. — At dawn it was discovered by Major MARSHALL and Capt. CASSWELL that the picquets were commanded in every instance by higher kopjes. Alterations were made at once, and only just in time. The enemy about this time discovered that we held the nek. Sniping started and continued all day until dark. Lient. BEATTY and 50 men of the Company were sent out at 7 a.m. to forage for mealies, etc., in the Brandwater Basia. They ran suddenly into a Boer position occupied by 2 or 300 men; but for the fact that the enemy were off-saddled, they would all have been captured. They retired rapidly for 8 miles, followed up by the enemy, firing from their saddles. Capt. CASSWELL who had been on patrol with 12 men, met the party coming in and was able to prevent the Boers turning the left flank, and checked them for a time, enabling the whole party to get into a donga and drive them off.

Reinforcements were sent out from Retief's Nek and the enemy retired. At one time the situation was very awkward. Ptes. ROBINSON and MOORE were captured, (but released), and also 2 Natives, who were never heard of again.

The Company lost 11 horses killed and wounded. Towards evening the enemy crept all round us and things began to look nasty. Sergt.-Major MCGREGOR, Royal Scots, volunteered to try and ride through to Col. BARKER, at Slabbert's Nek for assistance. This he managed to do, (for this he got the D. C. M.).

3rd. — At daybreak one gun arrived and reinforcements; firing continued most of the day, but at long ranges; eventually the enemy retired.

4th. — At 4 p.m. Major MARSHALL and troops marched back to Slabbert's Nek, arriving 6 p.m. A lot of our horses had been killed, otherwise there were no casualties.

5th. — The whole of Col. BARKER's Column left Slabbert's Nek at 3.30 a.m., marched 28 miles, fighting most of the way. 4 Boers killed, 6 taken prisoners. Guns shelled a kopje, then Yeomanry galloped it.

6th. — Marched 22 miles.

7th. — Arrived at Reitz Spruit; the Company was on Rear Guard, left camp at 3.30 a.m. (25 miles). All the troops on half rations for 4 days.





8th.—Marched to Winburg. Orders received for the Company to entrain for Pretoria.

9th.—The Company entrained for Pretoria “to have a couple of months’ hard earned rest on Garrison duty,” so said General ALDERSON, the Inspector General of M.I. Our strength was 2 Officers, Capt. CASSWELL and Lieut. BEATTY (6th R. Warwicks attached), 84 N. C. O.’s and men; 125 horses, 29 mules, 2 buck wagons, 1 Scotch cart, 1 water cart, 1 Cape cart, and 12 Natives. Gave in 19 horses to remount Department and got out 21 remounts. Lieut. DE PLEDGE left at Winburg in hospital.

The Company crossed the River Vaal into the Transvaal for the first time during the Campaign.

10th.—Upon arriving at Pretoria in the evening the Company was met at the Station by a Staff Officer with orders for it to go on at once to Waterval, and join Colonel HACKETT THOMPSON’S Column, then being formed to hunt down JACK HINDON, the train wrecker. Gen. ALDERSON also met the Company and made a speech, saying he had heard of the excellent work of the Company and that he soon hoped to give the Company a rest, although at present this could not be managed.

The Company joined at Waterval the Column commanded by Col. HACKETT-THOMPSON.

12th.—The Column marched 6 miles; it consisted of 2 guns “T” Battery, R. H. A., 2 guns R. A., 1 Pom Pom, 4 Machine Guns, 1 Company Camerons, 200 Canadians under Major Ross, some Yeomanry, and our Company.

13th.—The Company, with all the Mounted Troops under Major Ross, was sent forward to reconnoitre; left camp at 4 a.m., returned 6 p.m., having trekked 40 miles. Lieut. BEATTY and a patrol were fired on in the Bush Country at 30 yards, nobody hit. 12 of the train wreckers captured and shot.

14th.—Capt. CASSWELL left in command of the camp with 2 guns and 200 men; the remainder engaged 200 of the enemy. The Column lost 2 killed, 2 wounded. 3 Boers killed, 3 wounded.

17th.—The Column marched to Erstefabriken, 18 miles, the Company was on rear guard.

18th.—The Column marched to Elands River, 16 miles, the Company was on left flank guard.

19th.—Pte. STAFFORD of the Company, when charging his magazine exploded a cartridge, shooting Lee-Corporal HICKLIN through the right wrist (he was afterwards invalided from the service), and breaking the leg of a horse which had to be shot. Marched to Bronkhorst Spruit, 12 miles.

24th.—The Column made a night march in conjunction with Col. COPLEY's Column; left camp at midnight.

25th.—Small parties of the enemy fired upon. Arrived Wilge River.

29th.—The Column marched to Witpoort at 1.30 a.m.

The Company was escort to the Convoy.

30th.—Capt. CASSWELL and 30 men went as escort to Col. HACKETT-THOMPSON, who visited Col. COPLEY.

1st October.—The Column marched to Bokpoort, a few Boers seen but none captured.

3rd.—All the Mounted Troops went out. About 100 Boers seen, 1 Canadian captured. The Company galloped a kopje occupied by the enemy but they bolted, 3 only being captured; although there was sharp firing as the Company advanced, nobody was hit.

5th.—Orders came for the Company to return to Pretoria about 10th instant.

The Company went with a Convoy to Balmoral.

6th.—Marched to Krondraal, 15 miles, got in communication with Col. COPLEY's Column.

7th.—The Company was on inlying picquet, later in the day it was sent out with 2 guns to assist the Mounted Troops who were engaged. The Column came in touch with Col. RAWLINSON's Column. Lieut. BEATTY and 25 men went into Balmoral with a Convoy, where they stayed until they were joined by the Head Quarters of the Company.

9th.—Capt. CASSWELL went out with 40 men of the Company and 40 of the Cameron M. I. to cover the advance of Canadian Troop S. A. C. The Canadian Scouts, in the meantime, got surrounded and all mounted troops had to go to their assistance; there was a lot of wild firing on both sides and very little damage done.





10th.—The Company left Col. HACKETT-THOMPSON'S Column and marched to Balmoral, 30 miles, in pouring rain; off-saddled and out-spanned half way at an S. A. C. Post. Met Major Ross with reinforcements for his Canadians, also Col. McBEAN (Gordon Highlanders) going out to take over the Column. Met the 4th Company Shorncliffe M. I. half way, handed over the transport to it.

11th.—Lieut. BEATTY and 25 men went as escort to a Convoy.

12th.—The Company left Balmoral by train, arrived Pretoria 5 p.m., but owing to a mistake there was no transport at the Station; did not get to our camp until 9 p.m.

From 13th to 18th. The men were in rags, and had to be equipped fully, the whole time was occupied in doing this. As the Company was likely to be in Pretoria for a couple of months a general clear up was made.

19th.—Capt. CASSWELL received orders at 2 p.m. for the Company to entrain at 4 p.m. for Klerksdorp. As the men were most of them on leave in Pretoria it was impossible to carry out this order; with great difficulty the move was postponed until the next morning. This was the well earned rest promised by Gen. ALDERSON—one week in Pretoria, during which time the Company was equipping! Lieut. DE PLEDGE rejoined the Company.

20th.—The Company was entrained for Klerksdorp at 8 a.m. Capt. CASSWELL, Lieuts. DE PLEDGE and BEATTY, 79 N. C. O.'s and men, and 109 horses and transport. The whole Company entrained in 45 minutes. Arrived at destination 10.45 p.m. Slept in train.

The Company detrained and joined Col. HICKIE'S Column.

21st.—Capt. CASSWELL commanded a Company of the 11th M. I. as well as his own in the field, (200 men), until he went into hospital and was invalided. The Column consisted of 2 guns "P" Battery, 2 guns 78th Battery, 1 Pom Pom, 400 Yeomanry, 2 Companies 21st M. I., 1 Company 11th M. I., and 300 S. W. Borderers.

22nd.—Lieut. NAPIER joined the Company from the Battalion.

25th.—Column left Klerksdorp for a three days' trek. Lieut. BEATTY in command of Company. Capt. CASSWELL left behind seedy with veldt sores.

28th.—Lieut. BEATTY and Sergt.-Major SEATON both carried men out of action on their horses (the men's horses had been shot under them) under a very heavy fire. They were recommended for the D. S. O. and D. C. M. respectively.



29th. The Column returned to Klerksdorp, and marched off at 1.30 p.m. Capt. CASSWELL rejoined the Company. The Garrison at Ventersdorp had sent up some rockets, a signal meaning that it was besieged, so the Column was sent to its relief. Got into helio. communication with Ventersdorp. The Boers had either captured or killed all the Grazing Guard and gone off with 300 trek oxen belonging to Col. HICKIE's ox transport. A few shots were exchanged with the Boer Rear Guard, then the Column trekked round the country until the 4th Nov., trying to come up with the cattle, but it had got too much start. 6 Boers captured. Column returned to Klerksdorp.

Got orders to march again at 8 a.m. the following morning, but the ground was too soft for the transport, so did not start until 6th.

6th November.—The Column started off again to cover the building of a line of Block Houses down the Schoon Spruit to Ventersdorp, into which the Cheshires and S. W. Borderers were put.

7th.—The 10th and 11th M. I. (2 Companies) went as escort to General BARKER (Capt. CASSWELL in command) to select sites for Block Houses.

8th.—Arrived Brakspruit; the Company had to turn out in a hurry to cover 2 guns which were shelling about 50 of the enemy, who were sniping the animals as they went down to water.

9th.—The whole Column stood to arms at 3 a.m., owing to a report that 2,500 Boers under DE LA REY, KEMP, WOLMARANS, VERMAAS and LIEDENBURG were going to attack the Column. The Company went out to cover the building of a Block House; although it was sniped all the day, there were no casualties.

10th.—The Column slept in the trenches and stood to arms at 3 a.m. Col. HICKIE refused to move without a written order from Gen. BARKER; this he did not get, but several orders by wire to do so, which he did not carry out. As was proved afterwards had we moved, we should have been attacked on the march by 2,500 men, and probably annihilated; half the Mounted Troops had gone to Klerksdorp for a convoy.

11th.—The whole Column was digging sangars and trenches all day, and at night an Engineer Officer, Lieut. MEARS, with 20 Kaffirs, put 25 miles of wire round the camp (3 strands).

The Column stood to arms at 2 a.m.





Major HOUGHTON, I. Y., with 250 Yeomanry, went out to reconnoitre Palmietfontein Kopje; about 500 of the enemy got between him and the camp, cutting off his retreat. 10 Yeomanry were killed, and 10 wounded; 58 taken prisoners, these were stripped naked and left in the broiling sun.

13th.—The Mounted Troops and guns turned out and drove off the enemy. One prisoner was taken by the Company.

The Company was congratulated upon its excellent work that day by Col. HICKIE, and mentioned in despatches to Lord KITCHENER.

14th.—An ambulance went out for the dead, and the Hospital Orderlies were deprived of their watches and money by the Boers.

17th.—Lord METHUEN's and Col. KEKEWICH's Columns came to our relief, and we were able to come out of our holes. The Boers trekked north.

18th to 26th.—The building of the Block Houses was continued all this time without interference from the enemy.

27th and 28th.—The Column did a night march in conjunction with Lord METHUEN's and Col. KEKEWICH's Columns, 25 miles. As usual the Boers had trekked. Off-saddled for an hour, marched to Brak-spruit, off-saddled for another hour, then marched to camp, arriving at 9 p.m., having done 50 miles.

4th December.—The line of Block Houses finished, and the Column arrived at Ventersdorp.

5th.—The Column started back to Klerksdorp, arrived at Sterkstroom (42 miles).

6th.—Left Sterkstroom 4.30 a.m., arrived Klerksdorp (18 miles).

7th, 8th and 9th.—General ALDERSON inspected the Company and was most complimentary. Said he would recommend Capt. CASSWELL for the first vacancy to command an M. I. Regiment. Col. LONG, R. A., inspected the horses. Said they were the best M. I. horses he had seen in S. Africa, and in the best condition. At midnight Col. HICKIE, with Capt. CASSWELL as 2nd in command, entrained with 10th and 11th M. I. Companies (two), 3 Companies 21st M. I., and some Yeomanry, for Potchefstroom, from there to march to Schoeman's Drift on the Vaal, to relieve a Police Post that had been sniped for 4 days. At 5 a.m.

8th marched to the drift through very bad country : in one place there was a defile 2 miles long which had to be galloped through ; luckily the enemy had cleared. The Police were all right at the drift, and had no casualties. Bivouacked for the night. 300 more Mounted men turned up during the night, all marched back to Potchefstroom the following morning. The remainder of Col. HICKIE's Column from Klerksdorp arrived during the day.

14th.—The Column marched for Ventersdorp, arrived the next day.

16th.—The Column started off again to put 300 men of the Suffolk Regiment on Tafel Kop. Marched 26 miles.

At 3.30 a.m. the Column marched to Tafel Kop ; 300 of the enemy cleared off as we approached without firing a shot.

17th.—Capt. CASSWELL sent a heliograph message to Major RIGBY at Magatos Nek to be sent on to Colonel WYLLY at Rustenberg. The message ran "Officers, N. C. O.'s and men M. I. Company, Derby M. I., wish you all the compliments of the season."

The following day an answer was received. "Thanks for good wishes, the same from the Regiment to M. I."

20th and 21st.—The fortifications having been completed, 300 men of the Suffolks, under command of Major PREST, were left at Tafel Kop ; the Column marched back to Ventersdorp, arriving there the next day.

25th.—The Government gave every man a pint of beer, 1 lb. of plum pudding, and  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of tobacco. Lord KITCHENER sent Xmas greetings to all.

31st.—The Column left Ventersdorp at 10.30 a.m., and tried to round up some Boers (200) who had got through the Block House line near Klipplaat's Drift, and had attacked the S. A. C. post at Witpoorte. It wandered about from 31st to 4th January, without sighting the enemy, then it returned to Ventersdorp.

6th Jan.—The Column started off again covering the Suffolks building a line of Block Houses from Ventersdorp to Tafel Kop. This trek lasted until the 29th. Every day the Mounted Troops were on outpost duty, the Boers objecting strongly to the building of Block Houses. At one time they concentrated 2,000 men with the idea of attacking the Column: it is reported that when DE LA REY asked KEMP to join him, he asked how long Col. HICKIE's Column had been in its present position ; when told three days, he said "It is useless, the Column by this time will be under the ground." The Column was small, and in that district the Boers were able to get together a large force in a few hours.





9th.—On 22nd, the Company, Capt. CASSWELL in command, with Lieut. NAPIER, escorted Col. BETHEL, R. E. (who was inspecting the Block House Lines), as far as Vlaktefontein, where the fight took place in which the Battalion was engaged. On 26th, a Gymkhana took place.

The Company won the following events:—

- 1st. Wrestling on horses—Corpl. NICHOLSON's team.
- 1st. 6 a side Football Competition—Sergt. BEDFORD's team.
- 1st. 220 yards—Pte. BOWEN.
- 1st. Mule race—Pte. DAY.
- 1st. Sack race—Pte. BURNS.
- 2nd. Sack race—
- 2nd. Bucket and potato race.
- 3rd. Lloyd Lindsay team.

On 27th, the Column went on a reconnaissance; it met Lord METHUEN's Column at Rietpan; all off-saddled for three hours, then returned to camp.

30th.—The Block House Line was completed and the Column returned to Ventersdorp, 20 miles. On the way back some lost despatches and letters were found by one of the Company Scouts in an ant-heap, and handed to Capt. CASSWELL; these had been lost 6 weeks before, and a native runner had received £1 for destroying them "when they would have fallen into the hands of the enemy," according to his story; he now received 20 strokes from a sjambok for lying!

Covering the building of Block Houses is a thankless game; there was fighting nearly every day, and the Companies on outpost duty were always having casualties, and could not get any satisfaction, not being able to leave the working parties. About a dozen prisoners were taken.

The Company lost 12 horses from horse sickness in a fortnight, between Ventersdorp and Tafel Kop.

31st.—The Column marched again to Buffels Vlei (19 miles).

1st February.—The Column marched to Vaalbank, 15 miles, and joined Colonel KEKEWICH's Column.

2nd.—Church Parade for the whole Column. In the afternoon the Company was suddenly ordered out to reinforce some Yeomanry who had been attacked by about 200 of the enemy when on outpost duty, and had 3 men badly wounded.



3rd.—The Column marched to Leuwfontein. Col. HICKIE's troops were main body. Col. KEKEWICH went all round the trenches.

4th.—The Company detailed for Night Outposts, this was cancelled later, and a night march ordered. The following troops went out. 1 Regiment Scottish Horse, some Yeomanry, our Company, one Company 11th M. I., 1 Pom Pom; the whole under command of Major LEADER of the Carbineers, commanding the Scottish Horse, about 800 strong.

The objective at first being to try and capture DE LA REY, who was supposed to be at a farm about 40 miles away. During the night a Boer Picquet was captured, and from it was ascertained that Commandant ALBERT's laager was within 5 miles of our force. The first plan was abandoned and all was made ready to attack the laager.

5th.—At 4.15 a.m., a Squadron of the Scottish Horse stumbled right into the laager, and for a few minutes had a very warm time of it. The O. C. Squadron S. Horse sent a galloper with a message, asking for assistance, as the prisoners they had taken had rearmed again, and they had not sufficient men to recapture them.

Captain CASSWELL received this message and at once galloped the Company straight at the laager (without any casualties), and in a few minutes had collected the prisoners, who seeing that all was up threw down their arms. There were 8 Boers killed, and 131 prisoners. 800 cattle were captured, also wagons, Cape carts, saddles, rifles, etc., etc. Unfortunately nearly all their horses had stampeded. Only 40 of the enemy got away. Our casualties were 3 Officers and 3 men wounded. Major LEADER and all the troops under his command were congratulated by Lord KITCHENER upon their gallant behaviour.

Colonel KEKEWICH's Column was protecting a Block House Line being built from Klipplaats' Drift to Lichtenburg by the Norfolk Regiment.

9th and 10th.—All the Mounted Troops paraded at 7 p.m. for a night march. At dawn 3 Boers were captured. Arrived back in camp at 9.30 a.m.

11th and 12th.—The whole force paraded at 11 p.m. for a night march under command of Colonel HICKIE. At dawn the force was split into two parts. Colonel HICKIE took one, and Captain CASSWELL the other. The Company under Lieut. BEATTY captured 3 prisoners after a most exciting chase; there were also 3 other prisoners taken, and 6 by Colonel HICKIE's force, 1,000 head of cattle and 6 Cape carts.





11th and 12th.—Pte. SINGLETON of the Company was wounded and taken prisoner, his horse being shot under him.

15th.—The Column marched to within 5 miles of Lichtenburg.

16th.—Night march for the Column under Colonel HICKIE. After going 15 miles it was reported that DE LA REY was near with 1,200 men (our force was 800), we were at once turned about and marched back to camp. The information turned out to be absolutely untrue.

Colonel GRENFELL took over command of the Column from Colonel HICKIE, Colonel KEKEWICH still being in command of the force.

21st.—On 13th, Captain CASSWELL was sent into Klerksdorp with 150 prisoners, most of them belonging to Commandant ALBERT's laager; it was a very ticklish duty; the escort consisted of only 120 men, and General KEMP with 600 men was on the look out to recapture the prisoners if possible.

The convoy arrived safely without being attacked.

The first night the prisoners started to sing hymns with no doubt the idea of letting their friends know which way they were being taken in; this, of course, was stopped immediately.

22nd.—Night march; rained all night (Captain CASSWELL in command of Colonel GRENFELL's Mounted Troops); at dawn found that the Boers had cleared. Marched 25 miles.

23rd.—The Column marched to Vaalbank. Lieut. BEATTY left the Company; about a fortnight before he had obtained a Commission in the 19th Hussars.

24th and 25th.—Marched for Klerksdorp, arrived Hartebestfontein and heard of the capture of Colonel VOX DOXOP's Mule Convoy.

26th.—The Column increased by 500 Mounted men. On the 26th it started for Wolmaranstadt, arriving on 28th, joining what was left of VOX DOXOP's Column.

1st to 10th Mar. Colonel GRENFELL and 1,500 Mounted men started after DE LA REY; the Company was with the force. A good deal of skirmishing took place, and at one time it looked as if there would be a big fight, but the Boers escaped during one night, and no trace could be found of them; the next thing heard of was Lord METHUEN's disaster at Barber's Pan.

The Column marched to Vaalbank. Colonel KEKEWICH with guns, Infantry, and Convoy had returned to Klerksdorp, the Head Quarters of the Force.

11th.—Captain CASSWELL, upon the recommendation of a Medical Board, obtained a fortnight's leave. Upon reporting himself at Klerksdorp he was admitted to the hospital, and sent to Johannesburg, and was invalided to England, sailing on 5th April.

22nd.—On 20th the Company joined Colonel Vox Donor's Column. The Company was refitting ready to take part in a big drive.

Lieut. NAPIER was now in command of the Company.

23rd Mar. to 9th April.—The Column started off to take its place in a big drive near Klerksdorp against DE LA REY and KEMP, which turned out to be the last organized before Peace was declared (14 other Columns took part in it); 3 Boers were galloped down by the Company. The M. I. of the Column got lost and had to put in at Brakspruit; stayed there the night without blankets. In the one day it had marched 72 miles. Every day the Column marched many miles, and there was a good deal of fighting, and several prisoners were taken. Lieuts. MEARS and PAUL, 28th M. I., were wounded on the 4th April.

11th.—This morning the Company furnished the screen (Lieut. NAPIER in command), with the Flank Guards and Support furnished from the 21st M. I.; Major ROY commanding the whole of the Advanced Guard. As soon as the troops moved off, large parties of the enemy were seen, and before reinforcements could be brought up, 1,500 of the enemy charged right through the Advanced Guard from a flank, cutting the Company completely off, and riding down the 21st M. I. who lost 2 Officers killed, 3 wounded, (Major ROY dangerously wounded), and about 20 men killed and wounded. The Company had 9 men taken prisoners and 11 horses killed. The Boer losses were 48 killed on the spot, and many more found later, also 68 wounded.

The Column pursued and captured 3 guns, getting back to camp at 10.30 p.m. The place where the fight took place was Roodeval. Lieut. NAPIER was complimented upon the way he got the Company away, and upon its excellent behaviour under most trying circumstances.

It had taken up its position on a kopje when cut off, and held its own until the Boers retired.

15th.—The Column captured 50 Boers. Arrived at Klerksdorp.

20th and 21st.—The Company entrained for Kroonstad (arriving the following morning) to join our No. 2 Company 9th M. I. The 9th M. I. had gone on trek.

After 3 days' marching the Company joined the 9th M. I. at "Proclamation Drift" on the 4th May.





The 9th M. I. marched at 1 a.m. the 5th., they had a skirmish with the enemy, but there were no casualties on either side. Distance marched, 58 miles.

Lieut. ARMSTRONG joined the Company from the 1st Battalion at Rustenburg.

15th.—From this date until the 31st, the Column was halted, as all operations were suspended pending the result of the Peace Conference.

Peace was officially announced on the 1st June.

Private MARRIOTT obtained the D. C. M. about this date for conspicuous bravery before he joined the Company, when under Major RIGBY.

F. C.

---

CASUALTIES.

---

*Killed in action.*

No. 5190, Private T. ROSE.  
„ 3878, „ A. HUNT.

---

*Died of Disease.*

No. 2894, Sergt. R. DODD.  
„ 5652, Private W. LONGMIRE.

---

*Drowned on patrol.*

No. 4367, Corpl. J. BRADSHAW.  
„ 5794, Private W. COSTALL.  
„ 5413, „ W. HULL.  
„ 3357, „ J. MURPHY.  
„ 5715, „ J. TURNER.

---

*Wounded.*

No. 4378, Private E. JOHNSON.  
„ 3211, „ R. LINEKER.  
„ 2709, „ H. NICHOLAS.  
„ 5323, „ R. GRICE.  
„ 5534, „ A. HOLLIS.  
„ 4404, „ G. SMALLEY.  
„ 2855, Cr.-Sgt. A. EWIN.  
„ 3662, Private W. ASHMORE.  
„ 4159, Corpl. A. PAYNE.  
„ 3646, Private T. SINGLETON.

*Note.*—F. C.'s list shows nineteen wounded, but the above named are all who can be found on any nominal roll of casualties.



## WITH NO. 2 ("G") COMPANY DERBYSHIRE M. I.

---

The Second Company of Mounted Infantry was formed in the Battalion on 1st March 1900, at Cyphergat, a few miles south of Molteno in Cape Colony, and was composed as follows :—

Captain P. LEVESON-GOWER.

Lieut. B. BURNETT HITCHCOCK.

„ J. H. WYBERGH.

Cr.-Sergt. CORRIGAN, Company Sergt.-Major.

Sergt. MUSSON, Company Q. M. S.

Sergt. LOVATT.

„ COOPER,

„ GEISSLER.

„ ROBINSON.

} Section Commanders.

The Company was supplied with a good lot of horses, though poor in condition, all South Africans, but no saddlery.

After the occupation of Stormberg the Company, together with three Companies \* from other Regiments, forming the 11th M. I. under Major FESTING, D. S. O., Royal Irish Rifles, trekked from Cyphergat to Bethulie barebacked.

Albert Junction was reached on the 12th March and on arrival at Bethulie on the 14th the saddlery was issued. Lieut. HITCHCOCK here left the Company on being appointed Provost Marshal at Bloemfontein, and Lieut. PERCIVAL took his place.

From Bethulie we moved on to Springfontein, where the Company joined the 10th M. I. under Col. SITWELL of the North. Fus., eventually joining the 9th M. I. in April 1900. Left Springfontein in order to join Lord ROBERTS' force at Bloemfontein, but were stopped at Edenburg on account of DE WET'S movement south on the east side of the railway line.

From Edenburg Lieut. PERCIVAL with 6 men and Lieut. WYBERGH with 15 men were sent out on patrol in the direction of Reddersburg, to endeavour to find out what was going on in that vicinity. Both patrols found that the Boers had surrounded a small Column, which had been sent out from the 3rd Division, at Mostars Hoek a few miles east of

---

\* "A." Coy. Royal Scots, "B." Coy. North. Fus., "D." Coy. Royal Irish Rifles.





Reddersburg. Both the patrols were compelled to retire to the line at night, Lieut. PERCIVAL going into Bethany where he joined the remainder of the Company, and Lieut. WYBERGH to Riet River Bridge which Major SHAW was holding with two Companies from our Battalion. The following day the Company was sent back to Edenburg with a convoy, picking up Lieut. WYBERGH and his party on the way. From here Lieut. WYBERGH took patrols on two separate occasions towards Jagersfontein; on his return on the second occasion, he found that the Company had gone back to Bethany where he rejoined it the following day.

Meanwhile General GATACRE had made a reconnaissance towards Reddersburg, but retired again without entering the town; while on the way back an order came that he was to occupy Reddersburg; Montmorency's Scouts and the Company were told off to gallop the town, which they did, capturing a few prisoners, also getting a good many rifles from various houses. The whole force camped at Reddersburg, but in the middle of the night orders were received to in-span and trek to Bethany.

On arrival at Bethany, General CHERMSIDE took over command of the 3rd Division from General GATACRE.

The following day the whole Division moved to near Mostars Hoek north of Reddersburg. We remained there for two days during which time the Company had to find the usual patrols and Cossack Posts, also collecting a number of useful horses from the various farms.

The Division then moved on to Rosendal on the Dewetsdorp road, halting there for three days in order to allow the 8th Division under General RUNDLE to join us. Throughout these three days it rained incessantly and the whole place was practically under water, added to which there were no tents, which did not tend to increase the comfort.

On April 20th 1900, the two Divisions left Rosendal and moved on Dewetsdorp, the Company forming the right flank-guard. Soon after starting, the advanced posts of the Boers opened fire, never staying for any length of time in one position. On reaching some rough ground nearer Dewetsdorp, the Boers showed in greater numbers and firing became more general: the Company galloped some kopjes only to see, on gaining the summit, parties of Boers retiring. Leaving the horses to come on in rear we extended over the rough ground on foot. On gaining more open country we mounted and were going forward slowly when a heavy fire opened on our left; this turned out to be No. 1

Company who were heavily engaged; pushing forward with half a dozen men some distance in advance, a heavy fire was suddenly opened on us when ascending a long gradual slope, so getting the horses in a dip in the ground we took up as good a position as possible, though with practically no cover, only soon to find that the Boers were in great strength and well entrenched.

One section on the left managed to get the range of one of the Boer guns (six to seven hundred yards) and as we afterwards found out did good execution, killing or wounding seven or eight men who were serving it. After lying in this position for some time, a Squadron of Yeomanry was sent to support us, but they only stayed a few minutes and then retired without doing us any good.

By this time our position was getting untenable as the Boers were working round our right flank: Captain LEVESON-GOWER therefore gave orders to retire by sections with as little delay as possible; as each section retired it was greeted with a tremendous fire including shrapnel, segment, and pom-pom, as well as heavy rifle fire: we then took up a position about 2,000 yards from the Boers where we remained till dark, getting then an order to retire to camp, which we did not find till late at night. When the Company retired from the first position Sergt. BEET (then Corporal) had gone back under a heavy fire to a Corporal of Yeomanry, who was wounded and unable to move, and had carried him out to a place of safety, for which deed he gained the V. C. A few men were missing for some time when we retired, but all found their way back to camp the same evening. Pte. MIDDLETON of ours was killed and Ptes. COPE and BRADLEY wounded.

The Company came under fire about eight o'clock in the morning, but though there were six batteries of guns with the two Divisions, not one of them opened fire till nearly four o'clock in the afternoon!

The next morning—April 21st—the Boers began shelling the camp at daylight but only managed to kill one native. The Company moved off with two guns towards the left of the Boer position, the guns taking up the same position as we had occupied on the afternoon of the day before. Meanwhile Sergt. BEET had gone off to try and bring in the Corporal of Yeomanry whom he had left the day before at a farm house half way between our position and that of the Boers; on getting to the farm he found an old perambulator, so putting a board on it he placed the wounded man on the top and wheeled him back to our lines! Sergt. GEISSLER accompanied him on this errand.





While this was going on the Boers brought two guns into position and opened fire on us, so that for some time we had to lie very low as the shells were striking all round us, though luckily for us a great many failed to burst; our guns soon came into action and after some time succeeded in silencing those of the enemy. Pte. WILLIAMS was the only man of ours hit.

Next morning, the 22nd April, we again went out in the same direction, but had not gone far before we found that the Boers had taken up a position in the night in considerable strength on our flank and could not be dislodged till we sent back to camp for some guns.

On the 23rd April General BRABAZON took out the Mounted Troops towards the Boer right; soon after leaving camp we had to cross a bit of ground which the Boers kept peppering with shells, and as each section galloped across the Boers fired two or three shots, but by marvellous luck no one was hit though at times the shells pitched right among our horses.

On the morning of the 24th April, the two Divisions advanced on Dewetsdorp. Our Company was told off to General BOYES' Brigade in the 8th Division, being the only mounted troops with it. We moved off in advance, with orders to work round the right flank of the position, but having done so we found that the Boers had retired in the night; we then met the advanced guard of FRENCH's Cavalry Division which had come to cut off their retreat, but had arrived too late having had to fight nearly the whole of the way from Bloemfontein. Finally after a long day we arrived in General RUNDLE's camp a few miles out of Dewetsdorp on the Taba'nchu Road at about 9.30 p.m., with nothing to eat and no blankets, our wagon having gone astray. On the 25th we patrolled out towards Taba'nchu at daybreak; in the afternoon we got orders to rejoin the 3rd Division at Dewetsdorp where we remained for some time. Lieut. PERCIVAL with one section was sent back to Edenburg with a convoy and did not rejoin the Company till we had arrived in Bloemfontein in May. Lieut. WYBERGH with another section escorted General CHERMSIDE to Wepener, staying the night with No. 1 Company who were already there, and returning to Dewetsdorp the following day.

In the middle of May the whole of the 3rd Division moved into Bloemfontein and was shortly afterwards broken up.

The Company took part in the Queen's Birthday Parade on 24th May, and shortly afterwards a detachment under Lieut. WYBERGH represented the Company at the "Annexation Parade" held in the Market Square before General KELLY-KENNY.



Soon after this Sergt. LOVATT, and one section under Lieut. WYBERGH, went down to Kaffir River Bridge, about 25 miles south of Bloemfontein, in order to take a census of the inhabitants in that district; they remained there about six weeks and then rejoined the Company at Bloemfontein.

In July 1900, Lieut. PERCIVAL left the Company, going to the Army Service Corps; we were also joined about this time by a draft of some 20 men who had just come out from England.

Colour-Sergt. CORRIHAN broke his leg and was invalided to Cape Town; owing to it being improperly set, he was never again fit for Mounted Infantry, eventually becoming Sergt.-Major of the Cape Peninsular Regiment. Sergt. COOPER took over the duties of Company Sergt.-Major.

Towards the end of August 1900, the Company was split up, one section going to Glen Siding and another to Karree. The remainder of the Company under Capt. LEVESON-GOWER patrolled down the Modder River towards Abraham's Kraal; this district at the time was quite clear of the Boers and the patrol eventually arrived in Brandfort without any incidents worth recording.

The Head Quarters of the Company remained at Brandfort from August 1900 till May 1901, being attached to various Columns working in the district, such as Thorneycroft's, the Highland Brigade under General McDONALD, also to General CHARLES KNOX. The work here was very heavy, half a Company having to find all the daily patrols and Cos-sack Posts, as the other half Company was still on detachment at Karree and Glen Sidings. At one period the Boers used to take up positions and wait for the patrols, &c., going out in the early morning; on several occasions this resulted in sharp skirmishes, on the remainder of the Company going out to their assistance, which used to happen about once a week; Ptes. BRADLEY, FIDLER and BRADBURY were all hit on one or another of these occasions,—Pte. BRADLEY for the second time; and Pte. WATSON was taken prisoner through losing his horse. The most successful night's work about this time was when Capt. LEVESON-GOWER took out a few men to "lie up" for a Boer patrol, which ended in our taking five prisoners after an exciting hunt among some bushy kopjes. Lieut. WYBERGH and Sergt. LOVATT with a few men also captured a "Captain" of "Free State Despatch Riders" and another man one night; these two men were in a farm house which was less than a thousand





yards from Judge HERTZOG's laager (though we did not know it at the time) and, as we afterwards found out, Judge HERTZOG himself had only left the farm a few minutes before we surrounded it.

On another occasion Capt. LEVESON-GOWER and about a dozen men almost rode into Haasebrock's laager which was situated in a hollow and could not be seen till the last moment : all however got out safely after a hard gallop of 3 or 4 miles closely pursued, the only casualties being two horses hit. Soon after this we had to go to Bultfontein, about half way between Brandfort and Hoopstad, which was being attacked. This place had a garrison of only 16 men fit for duty, so, collecting a few men of the Irish Rifles who happened to be at Brandfort, we went through in the night getting in next morning without firing a shot. The party (55 all told) moved in a long extended line of Scouts when nearing the village, which no doubt deceived the Boers who thought that we were the advanced guard of a Column. We stayed for about 10 days at Bultfontein, spending most of the time digging trenches,—at which work the inhabitants were made to assist,—till a Column arrived with rations, &c., previous to which we had been living on whatever could be requisitioned from the various stores ; we then returned to Brandfort. While we were at Brandfort Capt. LEVESON-GOWER was Intelligence Officer for that district.

In May 1901, the Company left Brandfort and marched to Zand River, dropping two sections at Doorn River, about 10 miles south of Zand River, under Sergt. COOPER. Lieut. WYBERGH had command of the Company, as Capt. LEVESON-GOWER was detained at Brandfort as Intelligence Officer. At Doorn River Sergt. COOPER and a patrol were surrounded by a large number of Boers ; after holding out for some time, the party made a dash to try and get through. Some of them succeeded, but Pte. P. FOSTER was killed and Ptes. WILLIAMS and SHEERAN wounded—the latter dangerously ; while one or two men with Sergt. GREGSON were captured, their horses being shot down. The Boers turned out to belong to HAASEBROCK's Commando who had their head quarters in the Doornberg, a few miles distant. It was only due to the excellent behaviour of the men and their quickness in seizing favourable opportunities that the whole of the party was not captured. Pte. HURT distinguished himself on this occasion by trying to carry a wounded man of the S. W. Borderers "through the enemy's ranks."

Pte. SHEERAN's horse was shot, but he refused to surrender when the other men were captured. On being approached by a Boer (who after-

wards turned out to be Commandant FRONEMANN) SHEERAN raised his rifle to shoot him, but FRONEMANN immediately seized one of the prisoners and held him between himself and Pte. SHEERAN while he took aim and wounded SHEERAN. The latter made two attempts to shoot back, but was unable to do so on account of his wound and was taken prisoner. Shortly after this Sergt. COOPER's party rejoined the remainder of the Company at Zand River.

On many occasions the Boers tried to cut off our Cossack Posts and once succeeded, capturing Pte. BRADBURY and four others. Sergt. GEISLER was also captured on another occasion through no fault of his own, and Ptes. RAMSHAY and RUSSELL were severely wounded. Sergt. GEISLER left the Company on being appointed to the Railway Police, and Capt. LEVESON-GOWER rejoined from Brandfort in July 1901. On the 3rd August, the Company was reinforced by some men from the 1st Battalion who had been trained at Bank. In September, the Company was attached to Major HOLME's Column for a short time, and succeeded one day in capturing 5 prisoners after a ten-mile gallop,—covering over 60 miles in 24 hours.

In October, a Column consisting of Yeomanry and our Company (in all about 350 strong) was got together under Colonel SHEKLETON with Zand River as its head quarters. This force used to move chiefly by night making raids in different parts of the country. This work came very heavy on both men and horses, for on some nights we covered over 40 miles. We kept the country fairly clear of Boers as they never knew where we would be at daylight, but the total number of prisoners was not satisfactory considering the amount of country covered, as our total barely reached a dozen all told, chiefly through bad luck. On one occasion when "lying up" at the Kaal Valley Diamond Mines not far from Kopje Alleen, a party of about 30 Boers came riding straight into the enclosure, when a few Yeomanry let off their rifles before the enemy had entered the gateway. This resulted in only two or three being captured instead of the whole party, as if once they had got through the gate they could not have got out again, the whole place being surrounded by a high barbed-wire fence and a party of men being concealed close to the gate so as to cut off their retreat when once inside.

Throughout the whole of October and November we were constantly on the move, on some occasions being out for a week at a time, on others only for a day or so, but as before with very little success.

On the 4th December 1901, Capt. and Bt.-Major PHELPS took over command of the Company from Capt. LEVESON-GOWER, who proceeded home on being posted to the 2nd Battalion.





On the 5th December, the Company left Zand River and marched to Bloemfontein, halting at Smaldeel, Brandfort and Glen on the way, and arriving on the 8th.

About an hour and a half after our arrival we got orders to entrain for Edenburg at once; we arrived there about 11 p.m. and were sent out at 1 a.m. on the morning of the 9th by the Commandant of Edenburg to try and capture Commandant BRAND, who was supposed to have crossed the line that night with only a few men. At dawn on the morning of the 9th the Company separated to search some rough ground, Major PHELPS going with one section and Lieut. WYBERGH with the other three. Soon after parting, Major PHELPS' party saw two Boers in the distance and gave chase; after pursuing for some way, the Boers led them right into the centre of a Commando of about 150 men who were lying concealed on some low-lying kopjes and in a donga. At the first volley nearly every horse was hit and the men took up a position in a small kraal—the only cover at hand, but commanded by kopjes on two sides; after holding out for some time the enemy suddenly ceased firing and some men were seen approaching the kraal each having a led horse; Major PHELPS' men did not fire on them as some one shouted out that they belonged to Lieut. WYBERGH's party and were coming to relieve them; when they got near to the wall of the kraal this party dismounted and suddenly shouted "Hands up;" as every man in the kraal was covered by at least two rifles there was nothing else to be done; the party who "held them up" consisted of natives dressed in khaki and slouch hats. The Boers then appeared from all sides and proceeded to take the men's clothing—or rather any that was worth taking. Sergt. BEET, V. C., was wounded and fifteen horses either killed or wounded, the only one not hit being Major PHELPS' which broke away and galloped over to the Boers at the commencement. Meanwhile Lieut. WYBERGH's party had lost all trace of Major PHELPS', and being strongly opposed by a large number of Boers in position had been forced to withdraw. After searching the neighbourhood for some time, Lieut. WYBERGH at last saw a man on foot in the distance who turned out to be one of Major PHELPS' party, and from him was first heard the news regarding their capture. From his account, the Boers, on seeing Lieut. WYBERGH's party, had retired leaving the men where they were, also nine rifles and some bandoliers with ammunition.

Eventually everyone got back to Edenburg the same afternoon having had Major PHELPS and 15 men taken prisoners, Sergt. BEET, V. C., wounded, and seventeen horses killed or wounded—altogether a most



disastrous day. Before leaving Edenburg that part of the country had been reported clear except for the few men who had crossed the line in the night; and on Major PHELPS asking the question, he had been told that it was perfectly safe to gallop any small party of Boers that he might encounter; instead of which the whole Commando under Judge HERTZOG and GEORGE BRAND had crossed the line between the block-houses without anyone knowing anything about it.

On the 10th December, the Company went on patrol to the east of Edenburg to meet Colonel ROCHEFORT, returning with him to Edenburg.

On the evening of the 11th we again moved out in a southerly direction and took up a position about four miles from the line east of Pompei Siding, in order to cut off any parties of Boers who might attempt to get across. The blockhouses on the line kept up a heavy fire all night but no Boers appeared.

Soon after daylight next morning we moved into Pompei Siding and were there joined by about 100 men of the Sussex M. I. under Major GILBERT. About midnight the whole party moved off east and arrived at Vitkyk about daylight; this place consists of a large tract of broken ground covered with bush and intersected with deep ravines, and we spent the greater part of the day searching this place (as it was a favourite spot for stragglers to conceal themselves), but with no result, except for finding the bodies of some natives whom the Boers had murdered a few days previously. After burning one or two farms, also a large flour mill which the Boers were in the habit of using, we moved on to try and get into touch with WESTON's Column which was on the extreme left of a "Drive" moving northwards. We did not get into touch with them till next day, after which we went back to Edenburg.

On the night of the 15th December we marched—together with a Company of Irish Fusiliers--along the line to Bethany and from there to Bulberg, which lies about six miles north of Reddersburg; we reached there about 3 a.m. on the morning of the 16th. We stayed at Bulberg till the 18th acting as a stop while the "Drive" was coming towards us through Reddersburg; having collected a good deal of stock and no Boers coming our way, we marched thence to Kaffir River Bridge, moving on to Bloemfontein on the 19th December.

On the 20th the Company was again split up for outpost duty round Bloemfontein, Major PHELPS with two sections going to Fischer's Farm on the west side, Lieut. WYBERGH and one section to Brand Kop on the south, one section to Mount Pleasant a few miles beyond Fischer's Farm towards Modder River, and a detachment to Springfield about seven miles east of Bloemfontein on the Taba'nchu Road.





From the 30th December to the 16th March the Company remained split up round Bloemfontein, finding the usual patrols, but with nothing of any importance happening. In December, Sergt. **MUSSON** left the Company, Cpl. **SMITH** taking over the duties of Quarter Master Sergt. General **TUCKER**, then commanding at Bloemfontein, used to pay the various detachments periodical visits, as did also the O. C. Troops, Col. **LINDSELL** of the Gloucester Regiment.

On the 1st March 1902, Major **PHILPS** left to command the Base Company at Cape Town, Lieut. **WYBERGH** taking over the command in his place. On the 16th March the Company left Bloemfontein by train arriving at Kroonstad on the morning of the 17th.

On the 18th we left Kroonstad to join the remainder of the 9th M. I. who were with Lord **BASING**'s Column. We halted the first night at the Lace Diamond Mine and joined the Column on the evening of the 19th, about 15 miles north-west of the mines. On the 20th we trekked to Bothaville, and on the 21st to Commando Drift, about 24 miles west of Bothaville on the Vaal River.

On the evening of the 23rd March, we crossed the river and marched to Wolmaranstad, halting there for an hour or so till daylight, and then moving rapidly in an easterly direction towards Klerksdorp on a wide front and with Columns in touch on either flank.

On arriving at Lermo Spruit, about mid-way between Wolmaranstad and Klerksdorp, we were opposed by between three and four hundred Boers who had taken up a position along the banks of the Spruit: the Boers eventually retired after wounding a Subaltern of the Royal Dragoons and one man; the Subaltern charged a party of Boers when armed only with a sword and was shot down and died shortly afterwards. After following up the Boers for some way a tremendous hailstorm came on and we could not get our horses to face it; after the storm was over we pushed on again towards Klerksdorp, but in the evening we met **WESTON**'s Column about 12 miles out, so we camped with them, this being the first time our horses had had their saddles off since leaving Commando Drift.

The next day (25th) the "Drive" being over, our Column trekked back to Commando Drift, arriving the same evening and meeting on the way about forty Boers who galloped off leaving us plenty of hot coffee, etc., which came in very handy. We had covered about 100 miles from the time of leaving Commando Drift on the night of the 23rd to the time of our arrival back on the night of the 25th. We were allowed no carts of any description and only great coats with a feed or two in the nosebags for the horses.

On the 26th and 27th we had a rest of which our horses were sadly in need.

On the 28th we left BASING's Column and trekked to Kroonstad, arriving there on the 1st of April.

On the 2nd April, Capt. RADFORD arrived from Rustenburg and took over command of the Company.

On the night of the 4th April, the 9th M. I. left Kroonstad in a southeasterly direction, and took up a position a few miles east of Glencoe Siding; there was no result, though the armoured train was firing in our direction most of the night. Next morning we moved on to Mierkatfontein where we halted for the night. The Boers sniped the camp after dark but did no damage. Next day we trekked to Kaalfontein Bridge on the Valsch River, about mid-way between Lindley and Kroonstad, where we stayed for three nights, a Company going out every night on patrol rounding up farms, but with no success, although we were generally sniped on our return to Camp next morning.

On the 10th we moved about six miles north to Doorn Kloof; leaving there at 2 a.m., on the morning of the 11th, we trekked to some high ground north of Lindley where we remained till after daylight, then moving on into Lindley; as soon as we moved off the Boers appeared on our left flank and kept sniping us most of the way in, though they did not hit any one.

We left Lindley again on the afternoon of the 13th, moving a short way down the Valsch River. On the 14th we continued down the River to Kaalfontein Bridge, a trying march over very rough country; the Boers again did a good deal of sniping, but did not give us a chance of getting at them; the same evening we moved on to the Lindley-Kroonstad blockhouse line at Doorn Kop.

On the 15th we trekked to America Siding on the railway line north of Kroonstad, moving on again the same night across the line to Rhenoster Kop, a few miles from the Lace Diamond Mines north-west of Kroonstad. During the night we came across a Government cattle farm not far from Amerika, which had a guard of about 70 natives armed with Martinis; these opened a heavy fire on us at close range, but after the firing had continued for some time the mistake was discovered; one man of the Munster Fusilier Company was hit in the knee and had to have his leg taken off. We lost eight horses through galloping into a barbed wire fence when going up to the farm, but recovered them all after daylight. Pte. GLYNN broke his collar bone, and





later in the night his jaw, through the Cape cart in which he was, being upset.

On the 17th we marched to Proclamation Drift about twelve miles up the Valsch River from Bothaville.

On the night of the 19th we marched due south to Schotland West—about 15 miles—where we surprised a Boer laager at daylight on the 20th. We killed ten Boers and captured twenty more after a running fight of about seven miles. Lieut. SHEA of the Munster Fusiliers was treacherously shot by a small party of Boers who, after they had put down their arms, suddenly seized them again and shot him as he was walking up to them, when he was not more than five yards from them. Ptes. HARRINGTON and SKELTON were taken prisoners through getting out of touch and having their horses shot when covering the retreat of some men of the Oxford Light Infantry ; these two rejoined us an hour or so afterwards without a stitch of clothing on ! We then trekked back to the Lace Diamond Mines where we arrived in the afternoon, having covered between 45 and 50 miles in eighteen hours.

For the next two or three days we did nothing of any importance. On the 25th April we marched down the Valsch River to Doorn Draai, and then returned to Midden Spruit about six miles out of Kroonstad, where we remained for three or four days, drawing stores and filling up with supplies.

On the 2nd May we marched from Midden Spruit to Doorn Draai, where Lieut. NAPIER with No. 1 ("B") Company joined us on the 4th May from Kroonstad, bringing our strength up to 113 rifles.

At 1 a.m. on the 5th May we marched south to Schotland West which we "rounded up" before daylight. A good deal of sniping took place at our rear guard after daylight but with no results ; we then joined Lieut.-Colonel MARSHALL'S Column and off-saddled. While still halted the Boers started sniping us, and one section was sent out but found them too strong ; the remainder of the Company then went out and the Boers started to retire slowly, when Lieut.-Colonel MARSHALL came out with his Column and we pursued for some distance ; the Company then received orders to rejoin the remainder of the 9th M. I. We left Lieut.-Colonel MARSHALL still pursuing, and eventually arrived at Doorn Spruit on the blockhouse line, about 10 miles west of Kroonstad, the same evening, after covering about 58 miles. Lieut. ARMSTRONG joined us from the Battalion on the 15th May.



We remained at Doorn Spruit from the 5th May till the 19th, when we marched into Kroonstad to fill up with supplies. On the 21st we again moved out a short distance halting on the blockhouse line for the night; in the middle of the night we all had to turn out as some Boers attempted to cross close by camp; heavy firing took place but with no results.

On the 22nd May we marched to the Rhenoster River when we halted about 12 miles south of Reitzburg.

On the 23rd we patrolled down the Rhenoster River and saw a few Boers who disappeared among the hills; we then returned to Winkel Drift where the remainder of the Column arrived later in the day. On the 24th we returned to Witkopjes, a short distance up the river, where we remained in order to hear the result of the Peace Conference. On Sunday, the 1st June, we received the news of the Proclamation of Peace by helio.

On the 3rd June we trekked to the Lace Diamond Mines. Next day the 9th M. I. was split up, a Company going to Tweespruit, a few miles west of Amerika Siding, where we took over a cattle farm, having to find grazing guards, &c., daily.

On the 7th June a draft, composed of Lieuts. DIXON and HUME and 66 men, joined us, having come from the 2nd Battalion at Malta. On the 22nd June we were relieved by the 6th M. I. and marched over 200 strong into Kroonstad, whence on the following day 65 Reservists left the Company to rejoin the Battalion at Rustenburg before proceeding home.

On the 24th the whole of the 9th M. I. left Kroonstad and marched to Bloemfontein under Capt. RADFORD, arriving there on the 1st July.

On the 7th July we left Bloemfontein with a Column under Major TOMLIN for Ficksburg on the borders of Basutoland, as there was supposed to be trouble brewing amongst the Basutos. We arrived on the 7th at Sannas Post, on the 9th at Taba'nchu, on the 9th at Leuwrvier, and at Ladybrand on the 10th July, and next day we got orders to stop there, as by going on to Ficksburg we should be exciting the Basutos still more. We stayed at Ladybrand till the last week in August, having very little work to do, which everybody seemed to appreciate. General STEVENSON came out and inspected us, which was the only event worth recording. The weather during our stay was very cold especially during the night, the hills in Basutoland being thickly covered with snow. The Basutos themselves seemed to be on very friendly terms, and there were no signs of any disturbance.





At Ladybrand we met again the 2nd Battalion Northumberland Fusiliers, which had been brigaded with the Battalion at the beginning of the war. On the 28th July Capt. ASLEY arrived from England and took over command from Capt. RADFORD who proceeded home in charge of Reservists. We got orders to return to Bloemfontein during the last week in August, and immediately after our arrival we handed in our horses and saddlery and the whole Company rejoined the Battalion at the beginning of September in Krugersdorp, a few days before embarking for Hongkong.

The Company was with Mounted Infantry for just over two years and a half.

#### CASUALTIES.

Killed : —	Pte. MIDDLETON, C. ....	at Dewetsdorp.
	.. FOSTER, P. ....	at Doorn River.
Wounded :—	Pte. BRADLEY, F. ....	} at Dewetsdorp.
	.. COPE, G. ....	
	.. WILLIAMS, A. ...	} at Brandfort.
	.. BRADBURY, H. ....	
	.. FIDLER, W. ....	
	.. BRADLEY, F. * ...	} at Doorn River.
	.. SHEERAN, F. ...	
	.. WILLIAMS, A. * ...	
	.. RAMSHAY, G. ...	} at Zand River.
	.. RUSSELL, J. ....	
	Sergt. BEET, H. ....	at Edenburg.

Died of disease :—	Cpl. CASTOR.
	Pte. HALLETT.
	.. UNDERWOOD.
	.. WEBSTER.

J. H. W.

---

\* Second time.















